LIBRARY

OF THE

MASSACHUSETTS

HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY

BOSTON

ALBERT C. BURRAGE FUND

October 1935

R. WALLIS-BINDER

THE

Profitable Arte of Gardening : to which is added much neceſſarie matter, and a number of ſecrets, with the Phiſicke helps belonging to each hearbe, and that eaſily prepared.

To this is annexed two proper Treatiſes, the one entituled, *The meruailous gouernment, propertie, and benefite of Bees, with the rare ſecretes of the honnie and waxe.* And the other, *The yerely coniectures meete for Husbandmen.*

To theſe is likewiſe added a Treatiſe of the Arte of Graffing and Planting of trees.

Gathered by Thomas Hyll, *Citizen of* London.

LONDON,
Imprinted by Edward Allde.
1593.

*A1
H648p
1593
05-1266

a4574
Bust. Oct. 1930
There

The Authours out of which this worke of Gardening is gathered.

Chicago Botanic Garden
2002

Sotion a Greeke writer.
Florentinus a Greeke writer.
C. Plinius.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Ariſtomachus.
Theophraſtus.
Ariſtotle.
Didimus.
Dioſcorides.
Democritus.
Galenus.
Paule Aegineta.
Petrus Andr.
Mathiolus.
Conſtan. Cæſar.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And ſundrie others.

To the right worshipfull Sir Henrie Seamer Knight,

Thomas Hill wisheth all wealth and felicitie.

Hen I had ended these trauells and labors of mine, (right Worshipfull Sir) I called to remembraunce the two notable sayings of the well learned and worthy Philosopher *Xenophon*, who did not onely confesse, but rather with other wise men did agree, that that Art was most commendable, and of all men most worthy to be allowed and accepted, which to a Common wealth brought any kinde of profit and commoditie. And because this Art of Gardening is of it selfe verie profitable, & bringeth most necessarie commodities, both to Cities & Townes, therfore in my simple iudgement, it deserueth no small commendation. The beginning of it is verie ancient, so that of no new inuention, but long ago found out, first by dame Nature, & after continued and augmented by the diligent care and vigilant paines of the wise & skilfull Gardeners, by whose industrie and meanes, it is now growen to such perfection, as I thinke it therefore most worthie to be accounted amongst other such good artes, as euerie Common-wealth hath need of. And although it may appeare somewhat inferiour to other artes, yet notwithstanding the same is as profitable, and altogether as necessary as the others are: forsomuch as this is so linked and chained to the noble Arts, both of Phisick & Surgerie, as by no meanes possible it may be seperated from the other, but rather as a daily handmaiden, continually serueth them both, the which two (at this day) are had in no small reputation & renown, & that not without good cause, forsomuch as no common-welth can be without them. And because these two cannot well bee performed without this third, therefore men haue continually sought to bring it to perfection. And first the ancient Husbandmen tooke great paines therein, after them the learned Philosophers & other wise men, which from time to time haue obserued & noted such notable lessons & instructions, as (at this day) are common among thē in al countries. This art being once known,

and the vse so necessarie esteemed, hath caused wise men by a kind of common consent, to place Gardens nere vnto Cities, Townes, and Villages, as a store house and place, wherin might be kept, aswel all such hearbs as are fit for the helth and preseruation of mans bodie, as also all manner of pleasant floures and delectable hearbes as are daily sought for, & required of the common people. And this Arte now, what long experience, and long continuaunce of painfull men, in trying & searching the condition & nature of euery ground, and their aptnes in bearing such seede as should bee sowen therein, is growen to such a perfection, that now euery good Gardener can tell what ground is fit for such and such seeds, how it ought to bee digged, dunged, and cast orderlie into beds: and after the seedes are sowen, how they ought to bee watered and weeded, that therby the plants in comming vp might the better prosper and come forward. Besides these necessarie points, in ordering the ground, in chusing seedes apt for euery soyle, and in obseruing the time fit for sowing, they haue left behinde them certaine meanes and wayes to auoid and driue away all such beasts, wormes, flyes, with the like, as commonly annoy and hurt the workmanship of Gardeners: yea such cunning, wit and wisdome is conteined in this Art of Gardening, that the wise and mightie Emperour *Diocleſian*, through the delight and pleasure he tooke therin (as writeth *Aelius Spartianus*) after he had reigned 18. yeres, left for a season the whole gouernment and rule of the Empire, and forsaking the Court, went into a meane house, hauing a Garden adioyning thereto, where he with his proper hands, both sowed, set, and weeded the hearbes of his Garden: which kind of life so pleased him, that hardly he was intreated to take vpon him again the gouernment of the Empire, so much did this quiet life and beautie of the Garden please him. This example may moone all other meaner men to haue the like felicitie and pleasure in Gardening, seeing so noble an Emperour chose rather to forsake his regall authoritie and power, and still to continue in that state of quiet life, affirming it a farre better and happier estate to liue quietly

etly among the faire and pleaſant floures of the Garden, than to rule, and be daily called on and troubled with the ſerious and weightie affaires of the Empire. But here I will ſtaye my pen, leaſt I ſeeme ouer tedious vnto your worſhip in ſo ſmall a Treatiſe, deſiring your goodnes to pardon my bold attempt, and rather to behold the earneſt zeale and affection of my willing minde born towards you, than to conſider the ſimplenes of the ſtyle, and want of eloquence. I ſhould haue been aſhamed (right worſhipfull Sir) to haue ventured ſo far, as to dedicate this my third increaſe vnto your goodnes, wer it not that the argument of the matter is both profitable and pleaſant to be read: wherein is taught a number of worthie ſecretes, in the ſowing and ſetting of the moſt plants, with the great commodities they ſerue for in the vſe of Phiſicke: and were it not againe, that I fully perſwade my ſelfe, that your worſhip will rather accept the minde of the Writer, than the manner of writing. Thus praying Almightie God to ſend your Worſhip long health, and the yeres of the worthie *Neſtor*.

Yours moſt humble,

Thomas Hyll.

The Preface to the Reader and diligent trauailer in *the Art of Gardening.*

IT seemeth (louing Reader) not without reason, which *M. Terentius Varro* writeth, that the ancient Philosophers named the Earth, the mother of all plants & crescent things, and the manuring & dressing of it, to be an exercise both vertuous and profitable. Which the ancient *Romanes* & diligent Husbandmen did well obserue, in that they from time to time did so painfully labor, & diligently seek out the vnderstanding & knowledge, not only of euery kind of earth, but to dig, dung, orderly dresse, & cast into square and euen beds euerie ground: and after the same, they diligently lerned the apt times which were most conuenient to sowe or plant in, according to the increase & decrease of the Moone, with the aspects of the Moon vnto such planets, as most aptly serue vnto the same. When the seedes were thus orderly sowen, and somewhat come vp, then they throughly learned that the often weeding and watering of the yong plants, did cause them the faster to come vp. And in such places where the plants grew thicke together, they by their painfull industrie learned to set them thinner, to the end they might the better increase & waxe bigger. And besides these, they carefully laboured, & diligently sought out all such meanes, that might happely expell and destroy the most kinde of venemous and harmfull beasts, wormes, flies, and such like, that commonly annoy and eate vp the seeds & yong plants comming vp. And as their diligẽce, great care, & painfull trauels bestowed in the Art of Gardning, deserued of al men worthie cõmendation: so I vpon this occasion, think it not much digressing from the purpose, to set forth this tretise of mine, now the third time increased, to which I haue added such profitable and pleasant matter, as I found written either in the *Italian* or *Latine* tung, that intreated of this Art: whose names (or the most of them) doo after appeare, digested into the forme of a Table. And besides these, I haue adioyned sundrie pleasant secrets, and the necessarie commodities also, which most of the hearbs serue vnto in the vse of phisick: which

which now I haue performed in ſuch ſort, as the like hether-to hath not been publiſhed in the Engliſh tung. And for recompence of my induſtrie, I craue no other of thee (gentle Reader) but frendly reporting of this Treatiſe. Which if I finde, it ſhal encourage me to publiſh the other part, aptly to this belonging: which onely teacheth the perfect order of planting & graffing of the moſt trees in vſe with vs, with the proper ſecrets taught in the ordering of them, right profitable to be vnderſtood. But in the meane time look for a proper Treatiſe ioyned to this of Gardening, named The Husbandmans coniectures, vttering the right profitable notes, not only of the cõdition of the yere, but other husbandly inſtructions, ſeruing neceſſarily to the vſe and defence of cattel, with the ſpecial gouernment to be followed each month throughout the yere, for the preſeruation of health: and diuers other inſtructions right profitable to bee vnderſtood. Vnto which beſides, is annexed a right pleſant & profitable Treatiſe of the meruailous gouernment, order, and vſage of the Bees, with the great commoditie both of their honnie & waxe, with their vſe and rare ſecrets aſwel in Phiſick as Surgerie. And this haue I rather ioyned to my Booke of Gardening, for that the honny Bees (after the minde of the ancient Gardeners) be ſo profitable in a Garden. Alſo look for a Treatiſe of mine, being in readines with the Printer, & intituled, Certain pleaſant problemes with other apt anſwers, teaching frutefull leſſons for the preſeruation of helth, with other philoſophicall demaunds, and their learned anſweres, vttering ſuch vnknowen matter, as hetherto hath not been publiſhed in the Engliſh toung, gathered firſt by a learned Cardinall and philoſopher, named *Fernandus Ponzettus*, out of the *Arabians*, *Greekes*, and ancient Phiſitions in the *Latine* tung, & now Engliſhed by me for the commoditie of many. Alſo ſundry other Treatiſes be in a like readines with other of the Printers, whoſe names & titles I haue here omitted, or rather ouerpaſſed for tediouſnes to the Reader. Thus leauing (gentle Reader) to trouble you further, I commit you to God, wiſhing onely your gentle fauor to further theſe my rude attempts. *Et feliciter vale.*

A frend to the Reader.

BY tract of time things most obscure are manifested plaine,
In time the drie and hardest flint is pearst with drops of raine:
By time we ioy, time leades our life, by time we doo possesse,
In time we haue that we desire, each thing both more and lesse.
Sith time of right deserues to haue more praise than tung can tell,
In time let Hyll *receiue reward, that hath begun so well.*
Experience placde in wit profound, in time hath made to yeeld
To him that whilome captiue was, a conqueſt in the feeld.
With painfull pen the Writer hath expreſt in Engliſh plaine
The needfull ayd and mightie force, that doth in hearbes remaine.
The time to plant, the time to ſet, the time to raiſe againe,
This man by treble diligence, hath brought to light with paine.
Of things that were ſo high of price, this Author by his skill
Hath brought ſuch plentie, that each wight may haue therof his fill.
For which this Author askes no good, nor gaine of glee,
He couets no vainglorious praiſe, as you may eaſily ſee.
His quaking quill hath forced more, a good report to haue,
A light reward, a ſmall returne, this Author ſeemes to craue.
Wherefore yong man or aged ſyre, elſe whoſoere thou bee,
That by miſuenture or by will ſhalt chance this Booke to ſee.
Let cankred enuie meete for hell, abandon euerie ſenſe:
And rather grant to ſaue than ſpill, to helpe than worke offence.
Yeeld thou due praiſe to him that meant not to offend,
So ſhalt thou ſee and well perceiue, whereto this worke doth tend.
So ſhalt thou know the good from ill, the right from wrong diſcerne:
So ſhall thy verdict framed, force the Writer more to lerne.

FINIS.

The first Booke teacheth, the skilfull ordering and care to be bestowed on Gardens, with necessary helpes, defences, and secrets.

What three points are to be learned of euery Gardner, minding to haue a fruitfull Garden: the health that may be recouered by walking in the same, & the commodity of gardens placed neere to a Cittie. Cap. 1.

SEing a fruitfull and pleasaunt Garden cannot be had without the good will, and diligent mind of the gardner or master of the ground, neither can any profite arise by Gardening, without cost and charges therein bestowed: neither perfectly can it be attained vnto without Art, instructing the due seasons of the yeare. It is therefore meete that these thinges bee first cared for, prouided and knowen: which being done, the Garden is made perfect, delectable, and profitable: and we then receiue by it two speciall commodities.

What maner of maister or Gardiner a fruitfull Garden requireth.

The first is profite, which riseth through the encrease of hearbs & flours: the other is pleasure, very delectable through the delight of walking in the same, which both giueth health to mans body, and recouery of strength after long sicknes, by commodity of taking the fresh aire, and swéet smell of the flowers in the same. And of these two, Varro and Palladius will, that Gardens bee plaste nére to a Cittie, both for the commodity of those hearbs and rots serving to Phisicke, as all other hearbs and floures, which be profitable for the Cittie; Séing that Gardens placed far from the Cittie, doe ra-

Vtility & pleasure ensueth of wel dressed Gardens.

Why Gardens ought to be neare hand.

ther hinder the apte bringing of all kindes of hearbes and flowers vnto the market to be solde. And for this doth Cato commend greatly, that ground or farme place which is situated vnto a Citie: In which ground, also be set little trées and plantes to beare vp vines, and that willowes and Osiers be set in watery and wet places neare to riuers, and that the ground besides hath moist and watrie places or springes in it: where as be Orchards also in most fruitfull and open places and that are well dunged, in the which all kindes of fruite may be set and planted. Place neare to the Citie (saith Cato) many and sundrie kindes of Gardens, set and decked with all kindes of pleasant floures, all rootes that be round, the swéete Myrtle trée, and many other necessarie thinges of like sorte to be set and sowen. And a Garden (especially for pot-hearbes) must be moist of it selfe, or els easie to be watered for fertilitie sake.

Of the standing of Gardens, the water necessarie to them, and of the properties of the ground, with the quallitie and temperatenes of the Aire, and condicion besides of the windes. Cap. 2.

where the best & lawdablest placing of a Garden is.

AND now to the scituation and standing of a Garden. The most commodities and profitablest placing of a Garden, is (as Palladius writeth) that the same be neare to a plaine field, somwhat lying aslope, & hauing through it small courses of water running as by certaine distances one from the other through the Garden. But yet beware that these be not ouer great courses, for that the easie and smal courses be more commodious. And this dilligently wey, that better is a little ground of field, being wel dressed and laboured, then a large ground hauing no painful labour bestowed on it at all.

What commodite it is to haue a Wel in a Garden.

And further vnderstand, that to haue a wel in a Garden, is right necessary, except the same may otherwise be watred with some Conduite, or small streame running by, or els be very neare vnto a running water, for water is a great nourisher to hearbs: But if there be no wel nor swéet water running by, then must you dig a pit (although ỹ same wil be very labourous)

labourous) to drawe water therout, in that a Garden of necessitie ought to be often watered, through which (as Plinie writes) it causeth the sæds sown, the sooner to spring vp, spred abroad, and to be the more plentifull. And therfore if you be minded to haue a wel or pit that should continue with water, then (as Collumella teacheth) you must cause the same to be digged, when the Sun is in the last parte of Virgo, which is in the month of September, before the Equinoctial haruest or entring of the Sun into Libra: For at that season do men especially trie and finde out, what force and vertue the wels then haue: at what time the ground through the long drought of the sommer, is then depryued both of moisture and rayne. But if you cannot well dig a pit, then make a little Pond or Cesterne (as Palladius teacheth) in the ground, wherby the raine falling all the winter, may run therinto, and by that meanes you may well water your Garden in the hot sõmer. And if now you lacke all these meanes before taught, for the watering of your Garden, then shall you dig and make the beds of the Garden in most drie places, three or four foot dæper and lower, that the banks about therof being hard made together, may so kæp in the water, which ordred on this wise dooth well defend the drynes therof, for that in time of the great drought, it is by that meanes watered, and the youg & smal plants be therby the better procured to spring faster vp.

A secrete to cause water to continue long either in pit or Wel.

But if the Garden be ouercloyed with water, then dig after thy discretion, dæp gutters here and there in the Garden, wherby the water falling into them, may be so led into some dæp pit in the end of the Garden, made only for that purpose and consider that in the ground and Farme places bordering neare vnto the Citie, the Gardens and Orchards should and ought to be nearest the house, and both well digged & turned in with dung, through the which fatning, they may aptlier spring & plentifullier grow. And beware you make not your Garden neare to any barne, stable or hay loft so nigh as you can, least the chaffe & dust both of the Corne & hay blowne abrode by the wind, fal vpõ the herbs, & so by cleuing on, peirce through the leaues, which so peirced, do by & by after burne

them, as writeth Florentinus in his instruction of husbandry. And besides, the hard clinging and gathering together of such strawes, and dust of hay blowen abroad by the winde in the garden, doth so cause a great annoyance, both to the hearbs & plants growing therin. And further take hæd, that the aire about the garden be not euil, and infected with the vapors of ditches and stinking puddles, standing nére vnto it, for that these do not onely infect and corrupt the plants, but dul mens spirits by walking therein. And in consideration hereof, you shall vnderstand, that euery aire, which is sone cold after the Sun be set, and sone hot after the Sun be risen, is both subtile and holsome: But that aire which is contrary to this, is and worketh the contrary. And besides, the aire most to bee refrained, is that, which wringeth and bindeth hard the hart and doth make straight the attraction of aire.

What annoyance the Vapours of stinking ditches doth cause.

And as concerning the temperatnes of the aire, and wholsomenes of the place, a garden in colde countries and places, ought to haue the fréesky or firmament open toward the east or towards the south part, especially if the same be in such a garden or orchard, that hath yong plants or trées set in it, taking hæd, least that by any great high hil standing betwéene it & those parts of Heauen, it be so excluded from the comfort and aid of these two parts, and so either through the North, where (to vs) the Sun is farthest off, or the late sun shining of the west, where the sun onely shineth at his going downe, the plants, séeds, and sets be so nipped and destroyed with the colde so long beeing them.

How a garden in cold countries ought to lie.

But if thou canst (saith Cato) let thy Garden be at the foot of an hil, and that it beholdeth or lieth open to the south part in some wholsome place, and that the hil defendeth the sharpe colde of the North-side, that might otherwise nip and harme the plants and sets comming vp.

How in hot Countries a garden ought most aptly to stand.

But in hot countries, let the faces of gardens be looking or lying open to the north part, which not only is more profitable, but also pleasanter and commodiouser to health. And a marrishe ground is euermore to be refused, how so euer the same be, especially if it lie open toward the South or West part.

part, and that customably in the somer, the same be throughlie dried vppe. Which so engendereth the Pestilence, and diuers noysome and hurtfull diseases, that greatly harme gardens.

And consider also the nature of the Mote standing about, or the water running by your garden, whether the same sendeth or vapoureth forth (for the most part) euery noisome or stinking aire, which might so annoy you, or the sets, hearbs, and plants, for such is the property of many little riuers: and therefore where any such like is, dresse or plant no garden nar vnto the same. The qualitie of Motes about gardens are to be considered.

And last, the winds are to be considered, for that the south winds be hote and moist, and the north winds colde and drie, and the east windes be betweene hotnes and coldnes temperate, yet drier than the west winds: and the East winds generally be alwaies hotter than the West, and yet the West winds be somewhat moister than the East. The quality of the foure winds.

Of the consideration and chosing out of good and excellent ground, and the knowledge of euery earth. Cap. 3.

AND there is much to be considered besides those thinges which wee haue hitherto spoken of in the nature & goodnes of a ground, if so be you desire to know a fruitfull profitable, and a batle ground: For euery ground doth not kindlie bring vp Garden hearbes. And therefore after the minde of the ancient Husband-men, you shall consider in this maner, by taking a clod of the same earth in your hand, and marking whether the same bee white & bare, or leane with sand, without any mixture of earth: either all chalke, or naughtie and filthy sand or grauell, or drie barren great grauell, or stonie barren and glittering dust, or if it be saltie or bitter, or continually wet and moist. For all those bee right noyous and great defaults and incommodities, contrarie to a fruitfull ground. The nature and goodnes of euery ground ought to be knowen.

And you shall also trie a rotten clod, if the same be almost blacke: and able enough to couer it selfe with his own grasse,

The triall of garden grond

and of sundry colours: which if it bee thin or mouldrie, must be fastned and brought togither by fat earth mixed therwith But now you shall knowe a fat ground, if you take a small clod, and sprinkle the same with swæt water, and so knead it: which, if the same be clammy, and sticke to your fingers, then may ye be out of doubt, that it is fat earth. Also dig a furrow and fill the same againe with earth, which if the earth doth after gape or open, then it is a slender and leane ground, but if it reacheth out, then it is a fat ground. And that also is a meane ground, which doth gape but little, and this ground also must bee swæte, which you shall easily trie out by taste thereof, if that out of a part of the ground, which most you mislike, you take a clod, putting ꝯ same into an earthen pan, and moistning it with fresh and swæt water. into which dip your finger, and so tast on your tongue how it relisheth and sauoureth, for by that shall you know the sweetnesse of the same.

How you may know a good ground.

The triall of sweet earth fit for gardens.

What earth is meetest for Gardens.

And that ground also is thought to be best for Gardens, which in the sommer is nether dry, nor clayie, nor sandy, nor rough, nor through the heat of Sommer full of chaps. For that the ground, which is so dry in the sommer, doth perish al such seeds and plants sown or set therin, or els maketh them shote up very small and slender, & the clayie ground bindeth too hard through the heate of the Sunne, and the sandy and rough ground worke contrarie to the other, in that they neither nourish the young plants, nor keep the water any time falling on them. And to be short, you must euermore choose a fat and loose ground, which needeth but small labour, and yeldeth also plentifullest and greatest fruite. But that ground is most to be refused, which is dry and thick, and both leane and colde. And among all kind of grounds, the chalkie and red ground are most to be refused. And of this Varro doth commend that ground, which of it selfe being gentle and pliable, bringeth forth Walworths, otherwise named Danworts. And that ground also dooth Columella commend, which naturally bringeth forth of his own accord, both elms and wilde young springs, and those trees whether they bee

A fat and loose ground is best commended for Gardens.

The triall of a fruitfull ground.

Slowe

slowe trees or Bullasse trees, and wilding or Crab-trees. And on such wise is a fruitfull ground tried out and knowen by such things which the same bringeth forth by the onely dowing of Nature. And yet euery ground at times conuenient, may by the dunging, be made more fruitfull and plentifuller, or bigger yelding.

Any ground by dunging may be made fruitfull.

How a Garden may diuerse waies bee fenced and inclosed: the maner and secret in making a liuely and strong hedge Cap. 3.

When you haue thus chosen an apt and fit Plotte of ground to dig a garden in, then must you in handsome maner, casting the vtter compasse of it (as either foure square, round, or other wise) enclose the same round about, and beset and fence it throughout, before you goe about to dresse it vp, or sow any thing in the same. For that Gardens being not wel fenced and closed about before the sowing and setting of anie thing in the same, bee many waies indamaged, as well by beasts, as by theeues breaking into them.

And there be many and sundry sorts of fencing and closing in of gardens, as after shall appeare. As first Varro nameth, or counteth that a natural inclosure, which is set about with yong trees or thorns, hauing in it the rots of a quick hedge, which we cal a quickset hedge, so the same shal not be in danger of the wanton waifaring mans firebrand passing by, although he should put fire to it. and that is named a wild and rude inclosure, which either is made of rude and shrubbed wood, or of willow, or bushes hauing no life, which wee name a dead hedge. And in olde time the Romans vsed to inclose and fence their gardens with stakes and laths, set very thick in order, and with small rods watled in together, or else by boaring large holes through great stockes of trees, through which railes or great poles might run two together. or three together, and so then raise and fasten a borde along, or stocks of trees, or such like thinges, which manner wee nowe name Paling, when the same is doone with Boarde.

And

And that fenſing of the ancient Authors is named a warlike incloſure, which is framed like to that which the ſouldiers make as a defence about their tents, and ſuch a one vſed to be made nær common high waies, or by riuers, that the gardẽ might not be indamaged by beaſts, thæues, nor land flods. And for this cauſe the ancient men framed this on this wiſe: as firſt a conuenient and apt ditch or trench was caſt vp, and made about the garden or field, that it might ſo receiue al the raine water falling therabout: and it had alſo a ridge or ſlope paſſage in it, that the water might the frælier paſſe from the botome. And there was beſides, an high heape of the earth on the in-ſide next ioyning to the ditch vrinke, ſo drie and hard, that a man could not eaſilie climbe or paſſe ouer it.

Alſo there were certaine which made ſuch ſtæpe ſteps without any ditch which they named walls. And they of old time alſo named that a builded incloſure, which was made of drie ſtones, or ſlate laid one vpon another, & that in diuers formes. For either the ſame was made with clay & ſtones, workmanly and finely built (in thoſe places eſpecially) by which quarries of ſtone were nære vnto, or of ſuch as were of ability to get ſtore otherwiſe. And either they made their incloſure of baked or vnbaked bricke, or with earth and ſtones mortered together, and framed like to the walles of an houſe.

The profit and commoditie of a quickſet and ſtrong hedge.

But the profitableſt hedge of al (eſpecially in the fields) and leaſt of coſt, is that which is made with Briars and thornes mired or ſet together: for this hedge & incloſure will endure an infinite time. And therefore this hedge of the ancient husbandmen was moſt commended: For that the ſame was wel knowen to them, that the Briar would not lightly periſh and decay, vnleſſe the ſame had bene plucked vp by the rots: And after the iniurie alſo of the fire, it both renneth and ſpringeth the better.

The making of a quickſet hedge.

The place that you determine to encloſe, muſt after the beginning of September, when the ground hath beene well ſoked with raine, bee trenched about with two furrowes, a yard diſtant one from the other: the deapth and breadth of euery one of them muſt be two foot, which you muſt ſuffer to lie

lie empty all winter, prouiding in the meane time the sæds that you meane to sow in them, which must be the berries of sharp thornes, briers, holly, and wilde Eglantine, which the Greekes call *Kunosbaton*, dog brier. The berries of these you must gather as ripe as you may, and mingle them with the floure or meale of tares, which when it is sprinckled wyth water, must be put vppon old ropes of shippes, or any other ropes, the ropes being thus handled and dried, must be layd vp in some bored flore. And in the place round about wher the hedge shal run, they will two furlong to be eared and digged, as three foote asunder, and a foote and a halfe deep: this they will to be done in the end of the Equinoctial of the harueft, when as the ground is well moystened with shoures. Collumella willeth after the Ides of February.

And they will also that those furrowes so lie all the winter open and vncouered, in preparing the sædes in a readines to sow against the time. And after that in the end of Februarie, they wil to lay the said ropes at length in the furrowes, and couer them so lying with thin and light earth, & to water the sædes againe, if næde of the season shall so require: which they will so to bee ordered, in that these seedes of the thornes, cannot otherwise shoote vp and grow, if they were ouermuch couered with earth: as this day they will not to be done when the winde bloweth out of the Southwest. So within xxv daies after do the thorns shoote vp, which by prettie helpes and short props ought to be directed, that shooting vp further, they may so supply the void spaces. Another way is this. First they plant yong elder trees, three foot asunder, and they take the brambles & wild briar, & put them in long lumps of clay or earth, & set them here and there betweene the elder trees, couering them orderly with earth, and in the comming vp of the yong plantes, they dig about and water them, if neede so require: & within 3. yeeres after, the hedge will keep out both theefe & beast. But after the three yeeres growth, the ancient husbandmen will that this hedge shuld be burnt euery yere once. for that by the burning they shoote out & waxe stiffer, harder & sharper. And to conclude, this is an vniuersall way, & the surest maner to enclose all gardens. A witty secret in the feneing of a garden. Another way of making a quicke-set hedge.

Of the first Maze. Cap. v.

HEre by the way (gentle Reader) I do place two proper Mazes, the one before this chapter, and the other after, as proper adornments vpon pleasure to a Garden, that who so listeth, hauing such romth in their Garden, may place the one of them, which liketh them best, in that void place of the Garden that may best be spared for the onely purpose, to sport them in at times: which Mazes beeing workmanlike handled by the Gardiner, shall much beautifie them, in deuising foure sundrie frutes to be placed in each of the corners of the Maze, and in the middle of it, a proper hearbe decked with Roses, or els some tree of Rosemarie, or other frute at the discretion of the Gardiner.

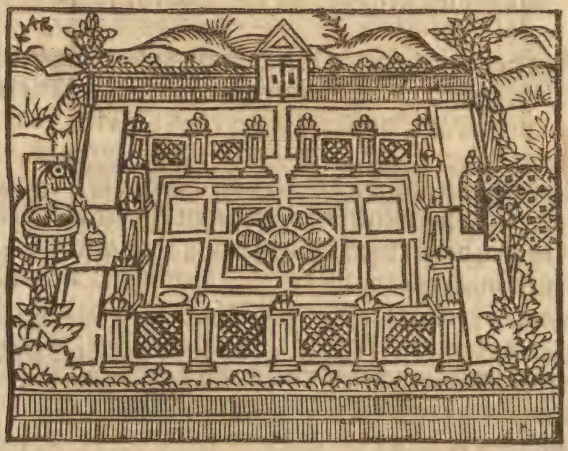
Of the dung and dunging of Gardens, with the digging, dressing, leuelling, and disposing of the quarters and beds. Cap. vi.

The apt times of digging & dressing the ground for euerie season.

FOr somuch as in the Harueſt and Spring time, be manie things sowen in the garden, therefore it behoueth to dig vp, dung, & labor that part of the ground in the spring time, which you intend to sow in Harueſt, that the same maye be ſerue

serue all the winter through. And those parts of the garden which you intend to sow in the spring time, that they maye bring forth their frute in the Summer, those parts applye & turne vp toward the North. And this shall you so digge and dresse, when as the earth shall not be ouer moist nor drie.

And that ground also which you will haue in a readines to sow in the Harueſt, must bee turned vp in the moneth of May, wherby the heate of the Sunne and all the Summer through may so breake and loose the clods, or burne or wyther the rootes of the herbes left in the earth.



And after that, the quarters and beds of the garden, bee thus finely ordered and turned in with dung, and sowen also for the winter, then in the cold winter season, before the yong plants be come vp, they must be defended and nourished with dung (as by sprinckling it on the beds) that it may the better defend the yong plants from the superfluous cold & corrupting in the deep of winter. But the grounds which you will sow in the spring, must be digged about the Calends of Nouember, & you shall so let it lie digged vp after the harueſt, to be burnt and consumed by the cold & sharpe hoarie frosts.

What ought to be done, after the quarters of the Garden be thus ordred and sowen for the winter.

For like as in the summer the heat of the sun doth scath & parch the ground, euen so doth the bitternes of the cold vnlose

the same into small parts.

Note, that good dung maketh a good ground the better, and greatly amendeth an ill earth.

And after the winter is ended, then must that part of the garden be dunged So that when the time of sowing is nere at hand, then that place of the garden five daies before shall be wæded, stoned, and dunged againe, and after that digged again, and with the diligent and often digging, so turned vp, that the earth and dung be well mired together, and not to lye altogether at the rotes of the plantes, but that first the earth be thin cast, and after the dung, and then the earth again to couer the same. For by that meanes shal neither the yong plants bee burned, nor the heate of the doung hastily breath forth.

How dung ought to bee ordred.

The worthines of dungs.

Asses best commended.

And the best and worthiest for this purpose, is Asses dung, because it bringeth vp least wæds: and the next to this is dung of Kine, Oxen, Horses, Sheepe, and Goates, so that it be not aboue a yere olde, hard, and dry, the which also hath his full strength, and bringeth vp least wæds: for if the dung shalbe older, it profiteth nothing, for that is of lesse strength: and yet in Gardens the new dung being three daies old, shal well suffice and serue the turne. But that which men make, although it be thought most excellent, yet it is not so needful to be desired, vnles that either the ground be barren, grauely, or a most lose sand, hauing no strēgth or force in it, which so being, needeth the greater help of nourishment in the dunging. And the Swines dung is thought very ill, for that the same is hot. Also the Pigeons and Woues dung is most hot. And yet ashes to dung with is thought verie good, and especially for pot-hearbes, being finely sifted: the which for his naturall heate doth not onely refresh the earth, but slaieth and driueth away all flies, and all kinde of wormes, snailes, and such like beasts that annoy the hearbes.

Next Kine, Oxen, sheepe, horse, goates.

New dung is vnprofitable for gardens.

Swines, Pigeons, & Doues dung best for pot-hearbs.

And the like in a maner doth the pigeons dung, so that the same be scattered like seedes on the ground, wherby to season ground the better: and not on heapes, like the laying of the ape or horse dung.

And this also conceiue, that a watry Garden ground needeth more dunging, & a dry ground the lesser dunging: and besides

sides these, you may dung your gauelly ground with chalke, if so be you can get no cattels dung, and the chalkie or ouer thicke ground, you may dung with grauell, for the lack of other dung. And by that meanes, such garden grounds be not onely made bat tle and good of yeld, but become also beautifull, as writeth Columella. What to bee done in the lack of dung.

And Pliny writeth, that when you dung your garden, let the wind then blow out of the West, and the Moone decreasing, of light and drie that season so nigh as you can. For by that meanes doth the ground yeld the plentifuller. What to be obserued in dunging the Gardens.

And now after the new digging and turning vp again about the middle of Januarie, the Garden must then be garnished with hearbs, before the quarters and beds be cast out and deuised. And you may make the herbers either straight running vp, or else vaulted or close ouer the head, like to the vine herbers now a daies made.

And if they be made with Iuniper wood, you neede to repaire nothing therof for ten yeres after: but if they be made with willow poles, then must you new repaire them euery 3 yere after. And he which will set Roses to run along about his herber, or beds round about his herber, must set them in Februarie. Iuniper poles best commended for the building of herbers.

And the beds of Roses be commonly set in a most short furrow, or be placed by alleys round about the garden, whether ye set them in slips, or sow them in seedes. And Palladius writeth, that we may not thinke those to bee the seedes of the Rose, which growe in the middle of the floure, in colour like to the gold: but that the seedes be in that which is lyke to a small peare in the vpper ende of the stalke. How Roses ought to bee set. Which the seedes bee in the Rose.

And the seeds be then ripe to be gathered, when the grapes bee full ripe, which ripenesse of them by their fuskish and browne colour, and by their softnes may be knowen. And in the like manner you may do, if you will sow that sweet tree or floure named Iacemine, Rosemary, or the Pomegranade seedes, vnles ye had rather deck your herbers comelier with vines.

And when the herbers be set & made about the walk of the

Walkes & allies be necessarie in a garden.

Garden, then the ground new digged, must be deuided into borders and beds, leauing apart that rowm and spare, which you will bestow vpon walkes and bowling allies, the which allies and walkes you shall sift ouer with the finest and least by raine and shoures, the earth should cleaue and clagge on your sole. And this done, you shall leuell your beds & borders of a height and breadth by a line laide out, whereby to wæde the hearbes.

Why beddes ought to bee leuelled euen of a bredth.

What length & bredth Palladius willeth the beds to be

And for this cause the same ought to be made, lest that in wæding the hearbs, they tread them & the yong sæds down. And therefore let the wæders goe by the paths and alleyes, wæding the one halfe first, and the other after. And the beds saith Palladius, must be made long and narrowe, that is xii. foot in length, and fiue in breadth, and spaces betwæne the larger, whereby the beds may the better bee weeded cleane on each side.

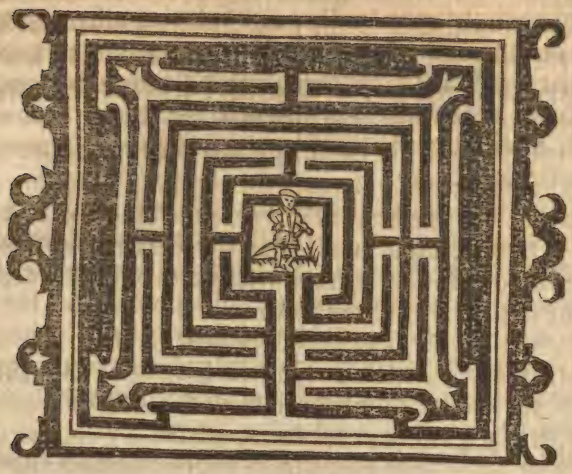
And let the borders or edges of beddes be raised two foote high in moyst or watrie places: but in drie places, it shall be sufficient to raise them one foote high.

How the water lying in the alleis may beled from place to place.

There must be made also certaine litle alleis or gutters, by which the moisture in watrie places may so run forth. And those allies besides must be deeper than the beds, that the water gently poured forth, by a watring pot, from the vpper part, may the lightlier soak into the gutters or allies.

And where the beds be wel watered, and that water standeth in the alleys by, then may you from thence lead the water into some other necessarie place, which needeth watring.

Of



AND heere also I place the other Maze, which may be like ordered and vsed, as I spake before, and it may either be sette with Hsope and Time, or with winter Sauery and Time: for these do well endure all the winter through greene. And there be some which set their Mazes with Lauender Cotten, Spike, Marioram and such like. But let them be ordered in this point, as liketh best the Gardner and so an end. For I do not here set forth this, or the other Maze before expressed, for any necessary commodity in a garden, but rather appoint either of these (which liketh you best) as a beautifying vnto your garden: for that Mazes & knots aptly made, do much set forth a garden, which nevertheless I referre to your discretion, for that all persons be not of like abilitie.

Certaine precepts & rules of ancient men, both in the choise and proper sowing of seedes. Cap. 8.

THE Garden, as Palladius writeth, which lyeth vnder a gentle & wholsome aire, and hath a Fountain, Spring,

or

or swéte water running by it, is in a manner good enough of it selfe, and needeth lesse instructions for the sowing therof.

The temperatenes of time necessary to sowing.

The seedes sowen in due chosen time, as concerning the weather and the Mone, do the sooner come vp: but sowen in warme and sunnye places, or well lying in the Sunne, doth speedilliest breake forth and shoote vp.

In colde seasons sow not.

And beware of sowing any seedes, the winde then blowing out of the north, or in very colde dayes, for that in those dayes the seeds be much hindred through the colde: and therfore for the sowing of your seedes chose warme and temperate daies, for the better comforting and spreading forward of your seedes lying in the earth.

A defence for the seedes sowne.

And if after the seedes sowen, you dout either the coldnes or hotnes of the season, in the scorching or burning of your seedes, then couer your beddes with the chaffe of corne, and with sticks a crosse ouer the same, and small reedes or twigs also laide aptly vpon them, for the better defence, as Columella writeth.

When plants are to bee sowne.

And all hearbes in a manner may wel be remoued, when they shalbe somwhat growne and come vp, and the earth (at the remouing) shall not be ouer drye. The newer seeds that do soonest spring vp be these: the Leeke, Siue, Cucumber and the Gourde.

The varietie in comming vp of new and old seeds.

And the olde seedes that do speedilier spring vp be these: the Parcely, Beetes, Cresses, Sauery, Marioram, Penny-royall, and Coliander. And the seedes sowen in hot places do speedilier shoote vp in the stalkes, and sooner yeilde forth seedes.

And the seedes that soonest breake and come vp, be Basil, Spinage, Mauewe, which is a kinde of Rapes and Rocket: for all these at the third dayes sowing, appeare aboue the ground and yet the slowest of all seeds commeth vp Parcely.

A secrete to make Leekes & onions begin the head.

And to put many seedes into one hole in the ground, shall all gather into one substance, and bring forth the greater fruite: Like as you shall put many heades of Leekes or Onyons, into one hole together, and treading the blades often downe in the growing and shooting vp.

And

And the Letuce, Parsly, Rocket & Basil, may grow altogither out of one stem or stalke, take two or three small bals of the Goat or sheps dung, and those breake, and mingle the sedes togither in them, & after role altogither, into a round ball, which after set into new Cow-dung, and couering the same with wel dressed and fine earth, that gently water.

Rare secret in causing sundry plants to grow out of one stalke.

And some do take two or three of the shepe or goats dung and breaking them, do so mingle the seeds and dung togither which they after lap in a linnen cloth, and order the same in the ground, as afore is taught.

A secret not vnlike to the former.

And that many sauours & tastes may be felt in one herbe: take first of the Letuce two or three seedes, of the Endiue so many, of the Smallage the like: of the Basil, the Leeke and of the parsly (of al these three) so many seeds as of the other, then put all the seedes into a hole togither, and in such sorte that the seedes may touch one an other: but this before remembred, that you put them togither in the dung of a horse or Dre, without anye earth mingled with them. And thus sowen, there will after spring vp a plant hauing so many sauours or tastes, as there were sowen togither.

A maruelous secret in causing many sauours to be felt in one hearbe.

Of the times in sowing and proper ordring of seedes, with the watring and weeding of the yong plantes in the comming vp, the diuers manner of remooving and setting againe of the hearbs being somwhat growen vpp.

Cap. 9.

ALthough the Ancient husbandmen appoint certaine prescript times, as by months and daies: yet the same ought to be considered according to the nature of the place and condicion of the aire, so that you wey this with your selfe, which wee shall after teache, that there be certaine seedes which do more speedilier spring vp, and certaine other seedes which are more later comming vp.

The nature of the ground & quality of the aire are to bee considered in the sowing of seedes.

And as touching the Garden hearbes, they (after their sowing) require no other diligence and care, but only raking, weeding & watring. For that by due raking, both the stones are voided away from the new springing seedes, and all the

What is required after the sowing of garden seeds

noyous weeds that hinder the hearbs comming vp, are then better woone away.

What kinde of weeding hearbes is best commended.

And yet the cleaner weeding and plucking vp of all rootes must be doone with the hand: which differeth from the killing of weedes by ratinge. And of these also which moste harme the beddes newe sowen, is, to walke much by them, or to moue the earth, when the same shall be verye loose: for thereby it setieth fast the ground, that it maketh weedes the harder to be plucked vp, after the falling of greate store of raine.

The seasonable time of watering, and what kinde of water ought to be vsed.

And the watering of your dye beddes which often happeneth for lacke of raine and moysture, about the hot and dry Dogge-dayes, must cheifely be doone with luke warme water, and that euerye morninge and euening as Plinie writeth, if needs so require, with that water which timely in the morning is drawne out of no deepe Well, and reserued in some wodden vessell for three howres before, or (as some do write) that it be set vnder the Skye for two or three daies togither, that the Sunne may the better worke vpon it.

The manner and forme of watering of Hearbes.

And water not your beddes to much, for that the same harmeth and weakeneth the rootes and plantes. And to this water also mingle a little dunge, the which shall giue a better nourishment with the water to the hearbes and young Plantes comming vp, if it be leasurely and gentlye watred forth.

And the young tender plantes newe sprung vp, need lesse watring then the stronger growen, which desire a great deal the more watering, yet the same to be leasurely doone, that all the rootes may drinke alike of it, and not be hastely drowned with water. But colde, and salte water drawen out of deepe Welles, is most hurtfull vnto all plantes and hearbs, except the same stand for certaine howres in the hot Sunne, and be watered warme on the plantes.

And such sedes as ought onely to be sowen neare the end of Haruest, as in the moneth of September or October, that they maye all the winter continue, and bee soaked in the ground, be these: Garlike, Onnyons, Scalions, yong Lekeheades,

heades, greate Garlike and Mustard sade.

If of necessitie you must plante or sowe any thinge in a salte ground, then that whatsoeuer it be, must be planted in the end of Haruest, or sowed the like, that the euilnes and corruptnes of the grounde, may be washed awaye with the winter showers. What is to be doone in a salte ground.

And if you set any young Trees in that grounde, let that there-about, bee mixed with a quantitie of sweete Earthe and Riuer sand.

And your seedes (that you minde to sowe) may not be aboue a yeare olde, and that bruised be whiter within, and heuier, leaste beeing corrupt by oldenes, they cannot encrease and come forward. the knoledge of seeds meet for sowing,

The third moneth sowing agréeth in colde and snowey places, where the qualitie of Sommer is moyst, but seldome in other places the like hap correspondeth.

And seedes three monethes olde, will better agrée, if that in hot places they be sowen in the Haruest.

And you may plant and sowe in your grounde (if you will) the best kindes of euery fruite, seedes, slippes or graffes, but set and sowe that (which you knowe by experience) will best prosper and come forward in your ground. A good tryall of euerye ground.

But anye newe kinde of seedes, and not tryed before in your ground, you may not put your whole hope that vndoutedly they will prosper, in that it is doubtfull whether they will prosper or no.

And in moyste places, the seedes do sooner spring vp, then in the drye: and this vnderstand, according to the kinde and proper nature of them. And of this, the choice of ground in the sowing of your seedes much auayleth.

And all such settes and seedes do seldome prosper, which be sowne or set in shadowey places. And such thinges also as do flower: in the time of their flower bearing, are not to be handled. And all kinde of pulses, as Pease, Fitches, Tares, &c. (as the Greeke author willeth) must be sowen in drye groundes, except the Beanes, which ought onely to be sowen in moyste groundes. Shadowplaces hurtfull to Plante.

And such seedes, which at will and pleasure may be sowen (as both in harnest and spring time) vnto your vse and commodity, and that in a warm and comfortable season, and fruitfull ground bee these: the Lettice, the Colewoortes, the Parsnips, the Carrets, the white Poppy, the Artechockes, and diuerse other sæds.

What seedes may be sown at pleasure of the gardener

And in colde Countries the harnest sowing must be done earlier, and the spring later. But in hot Countries, the Harnest sowing must be later, and the spring timelier.

A consideration in the sowing of seeds in hot and colde ground.

And whatsoeuer you will sow, let the same be done after the fourth day of the new Moon, and so continue vnto the full of the Moone, but no longer: in that it oftentimes so happeneth, that the sowing of sæds in the decrease or waine of the Moone, prospereth not, as witnesseth Auenezra.

And such things also as you wil cut down or gather, let the same be done in the waine of the Moone. But such things as you minde to sell, let those be gathered in the ful Moones, because the greater they do then abide, the vendiblier, or readier they will be to be solde.

What season best commended for the sowing of seeds.

And all seeds which be kindly sowne, bee rather sowne in temperate wether, when as some showres of raine moistning the ground, fall a day or two before, rather then in a dry season and cold aire: For that the sæds like sowne, do spædilier spring vp through the warmenes and comfort of the season, then in a colde air, which of property doth both include them in the earth, and kepeth them long in comming.

And yet it oftentimes so happeneth, that although the seeds be perfect good, that they spring not after their sowing, through some malice of the celestial bodies. And for that cause sowe sundry sæds together, for the surer triall and proofe of them.

When plants may best be remoued, and of the commodity by remouing them.

And after all these, the most or greatest number of plants, may well be remoued, when they be somewhat sprong vp, so that the ground be not ouer dry nor ouer moist.

For by remouing such plants may the better be wæded (being thinset) and grow the better vnto their full bignes, and be also sweater, so that they gently loose and wæde away alwaies

waies all the euil weeds that spring vp amongst them which otherwise would hinder and take away their nourishment.

And those hearbs also which ought not to be remoued, after their yong comming vp, must be thinne sowen, but those which ought to be remoued, must be thicke sowne together. A good instruction of sowing seeds.

Certaine helpes and secrets for the Garden seeds, as well before, as after the sowing of them, that they may not bee harmed by any inward or outward meanes. Cap. 10.

AND now in vaine hath the Gardner (or any other) bestowed his pains, in the diligent laboring of his ground, and committing of seeds to the earth: if in like maner he seek not those meanes which may best auoyde the harme of the birds, scraping vp the seeds, and the other beasts and wormes creeping in the earth. And to auoyd these harmes and damages, marke diligently these instructions hereafter taught.

And first, if your Seeds a litle before the sowing, be steeped or soked in the iuice of the hearbe named the house Leeke or for lacke of sufficient plenty of the hearbe, to lay the seeds all a day and night in, you may in stead thereof, seeth the hearbe in faire water, and with that water you may sprinckle your seeds sowne in the beds, that they may so drawe to them, and drinke in of that iuice, which by that meanes doth only defend, that neither the Birds, Ants, or Pismiers, Field mice, nor any other vermine, will at any time after touche those seeds or yong plants after sprung vp, but cause them encrese the better, as writeth the worthy Columella, who of experience is often noted true. worthy secrets in preseruing the seeds sowen in the erth without harm.

And Africanus writeth, that if you seeth a little wheat or barley in wine, or soke it in the wine, with the rot Hellebor, or otherwise Moswort, and after scatter it in the paths & aleis about the garden, that the same not onely defendeth the seeds frō the iniury of birds, but maketh them seem as dead, or rather as dronken by eating thereof, which beeing on this wise, he willeth to hang by the legs on a sticke, vnto the fearing of the other birds. A secret that the seeds be not destroyed of Birds.

A marueilous matter of the decoction of Riuer creuiſes

And the ſaid Africanus writeth, that the decoction of the Riuer creuiſes, ſprinckled on the ſeeds, doth both defend the ſæds, and the yong plants ſprung of the ſædes, that neither the Birds, nor any other creeping thing will after (a matter greatly to be marueiled at) neuer touch them. And there be ſome, which will, after the yong plants be ſomewhat ſprung vp, to ſprinckle onely of the water wherein the creuiſes bee ſodden as a ſure defence, which many times hath bene tried and found true by ſundry, if ſo be the ſame bee done at a certaine time of the Moone.

A ſecret of the Greeke and latin husbandmen for preſeruing of ſeeds very notable.

And the pouder of the Harts horne, either filed or ſhauen, and the ſame infuſed in ſwæt water, and the ſæds before the ſowing ſoaked therein, or ſprinckled with that water after the ſowing, doth well defend the young plants from beeing gnawne of any creeping thing.

And the ſæds after the ſowing, ſprinckled with the braine water made of Nitre, doth well defend them from being eaten of wormes, ants, and ſuch like, as Virgil in his husbandry writeth.

And the Greeke Author Apuleus writeth, the onely ſprinkling of wine on the ſæds and yong plants, to be a means of the better ſtrength and encreaſe of them.

And certaine Greek writers of husbandry allowed of Plinie, Columella, and Palladius, affirme, that the rotes of the wild Cowcumber, ſoked in ſweet water for a day & a night, and that water often ſprinckled on the ſeedes, & the next day following, (thoſe ſeedes couered with a blanket) and after ſowen in the ground, that then they be defended from al noiſome wormes and other creeping things.

Secrets of the ſpeckled tode

And the Greeke Authour Apuleus writeth, as a ſafegard vnto your ſeedes, that if before the digging and caſting vp of your beds, you draw about the Garden the ſpeckled tode and putting him into an earthen pot, you doe after bury him in the middle of your Garden, or ouer whelme him with erth in a deepe furrowe, which let there remaine vnto the ſowing time, and after digge him vppe, caſting him a great way of, leaſt the plants growing thereabout, might become bitter

and

and vnsauorie. And the Egyptian and Greeke authours of Husbandry write, that the young plants shall not be gnawen or harmed of any creeping thing, if the seeds bee sowen about the first quarter of the Moone.

And Democritus writeth, that if you put ten Sea or Riuer Creuises into a vessel full of water, and couering it, you set the same abroad to be sunned for ten daies, & soke your sæds for other eight daies in that water, which after the minde of Democritus sow in your beds: and after the yong plants of those seeds be sprung vp, they will not onely driue cattle and other small beasts from the eating of them, but all other creeping things from the gnawing of them.

A phisicke experiment of Democritus that after the plants be com vp, they shall not be harmed of beasts nor of any creeping things.

But further of those helpes shal be taught in that Chapter, where we write of the diuers remedies against sundry beasts, wormes, flies, & such like, that commonly annoy gardens.

Certaine speciall times to be noted and obserued, either for their aid and fauour to be chosen, or for their annoyance and incommoditie to be eschewed for sowing, planting, or graffing. Cap. 11.

THe more of valure our stuffe and labour thereabout is, the more circumspect we ought to be, and the more aide thereto we may get, or the greater danger therein wee may auoyd, the more carefull euery wise man will be.

And the daily experience is our schoolmaster to instruct vs, howe much it preuaileth or hindreth for seedes to be sowne, plants to be set, or sciens to be graffed in this or that time, hauing respect not onely to the time of the yeare, as the sun altereth it, but also to the encrease or waine of the Moon, to the signe she is in, and to the places of heauen aboue, or vnder the earth, and also to the aspects of other plants, whose beams of light and influence, both quicken, comfort, preserue, & maintaine, or els nip, dry, wither, consume, and destroy by sundry wais the tender sæds, plants, and grafts, according to their nature, and force naturall or accidentall.

Herein

Heerein first presupposing the due circumspection of the choyce of ground, & other things generally required in this. And therfore according both to the authority of the wise and expert Astronomers, as also the wary and prudent experimenters, in either sowing or planting, or other like practise about hearbs, plants, or trees, haue left vnto vs for our commodity these rules following, that are to bee vnderstanded and kept in causes of importaunce, and where the occasion may be taken.

When Saturne and the Moon are either three-score degrees of the Zodiack asunder, (which difference is called a sextile aspect, thus commonly marked ✶) or when they are asunder, 126. degrees, which is called a triangle, Trygon, or Trient aspect, then is it good to labour the earth, for either sowing, tilling, garding, dining, or building.

But when they are a quarter of the Zodiack asunder, called a quartile aspect, which is 90. degrees, then meddle not in such matters. For when they are in places opposite one to another, as if the one be in Aries, and the other in like number of degrees in Libra, and so of Taurus and Scorpio, &c.

The full Moons are not good for that purpose, speaking generally as we now doe, the Moone being neere the Dragons taile, is not good, but neare the dragons head is good. Al other things be presupposed equall, and most briefly for this little tretise to knit vp other obseruations depending of the moons places onely, consider these following.

The Moone being betwen the 28 degree of Taurus, and the eleauenth of Gemini, sow. And the Moon being betweene the 28. of Gemini, and the first of Cancer, sow not. And from the first of Cancer, vnto the 19. of the same, sow and plow. And from the 28. of Leo, vnto the 21. of Virgo, sow and plant. And from thence vnto the 24. of Virgo, build, sow, and plant: and from the 24. of Virgo vnto the 19. of Libra, sowe & plowe, and from thence vnto the 19. sowe and plant. And from the 6. of Capricornus, vnto the 19. of Capricornus, sow. And from the 24. of Pisces, vnto the 7. of Aries, sowe. Besides all these, you may by your naturall reason, easily find this rule of the old

olde writers to be well noted to vs, that either in a verye moystie ground, or els the seedes you sowe, be seedes of great moysture, that then you shall commodiouslye choose the end of the Mones waine, when she is verye neare her change, but if either your ground bee of the dryest, or your seedes: the Mone wexing and toward the full, is fittest, as Plinie witnesseth.

And the more of these you can finde at your time concurring, the better it is: as in good ground well dressed in due season of the yeare, in due time of the Mones age, in due time of her place, in the Zodiacke, in due aspecte of Saturne, well placed in the sight of Heauen. &c. And vnles your stuffe be good, all this preuaileth not. And besides that, the common Almanackes vpon particular aspectes incident for the time, doo now and then exactly warne you of times good to plant in, as commonlye when the Mone is in Taurus and Aquarius, or to sowe in, as when she is in Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Libra and Capricornus, or when any of these signes are ascending in the East angle. And when Mars neither regardeth the ascendent, or the Mone, but that he be weekely placed in the situation of the heauens for that time.

A greate many of other rules as concerning the particular fauour or hinderance of the heauens, might (and that necessarily) haue bene brought in this place, but neither is it in my purpose, for this present, either to be long in writing, or darke in sence.

And perchance, the most parte of the common sorte of people will think those thinges somewhat aboue their capacitie, yet my conscience bound me somwhat to put such matter into their heades, occasioning them thereby (where the daintines and valewe of the seeds or sets so require) to vse the counsell of some such as both may expound them these rules, and giue them ouer alike if need be.

Euen heere you must presuppose all thinges on your part fully and onely first prepared and well appointed, and then to waite for or take heede to such times as heere are noted, for the working of the Planets therein.

Certaine helpes & secrets against haile, lightning, tempests, mistes, rust, frosts and burning heat. Cap. 12.

SEeing the seedes, plants and hearbes sowen and set in the garden, be after in danger of haile and mistes, and other stormie weather, which greatly discomfits the Gardner, or (at the leaste) such which hope to haue profite and commoditie by the hearbes sowne and set in the Garden: Therfore for the better auoiding of these daungers, the auncient husbandmen and skilful Gardners haue found out by practice, sundry remidies against such weather.

And first against haile, the ancient husbandmen counsaile to compas the allies in the garden, about with ỳ white vine. And Philostratus willeth, that when we se the haile neare at hand, then to compas the allies about with the skinne of the Sea-Calfe, or els the beaste Hiena or the Crocadile, and to hange any of these skinnes also at the enterance or comming in of the garden.

Helpes and secrets, against haile neere at hand.

And the Grækes write, that the garden shall not be harmed by lightnings, if that the same about be couered with the hide of the riuer Horse, named Hippotamon. And Columella writeth, that if you compas the allyes of your garden about with the white Vine, or hange an Owle in the Garden with the winges abroad, that either of these do defend the garden from lightnings. And sundrye do plant the Bay trée in diuers places of the garden, as a defence to it against lightninges.

Helps against lightnings.

And Archibius wrote vnto Antiochus King of Siria, and diuers auncient men the like, that if you burye the speckled Mode inclosed in a newe earthen pot, in the middle of your Garden, that the same defendeth it from hurtfull weather and tempestes.

Some also hang the Eagles feathers, or the skinne of the Sea-Calfe in the middle of the garden, or in the four corners of the same as a proued defence to it against tempestes. And if thicke mystes do harme thy garden, then burne heapes of Chaffe, weedes, or shrubbes in sundrye places, for that the

Helps against thicke mystes and frostes.

smoake

smoake shall much help this matter. And Diophanes in his rules of husbandrye, willeth to gather togither dead weedes or such like matter, and burne them on heapes in many places about the garden, but especially in that parte which way the winde then bloweth, that it may so carrie the smoake through the Garden, for by that meanes, it is thought to auoide and put away the euill and harme of the myste which is then present or at hand.

And when rust is falling on the hearbes, then Beritius in his husbandry instructions, willeth to burne the left horn of an Oxe, with Oxe dung, and to make a great smoake forthwith round about the garden, but especially that way which the winde then bloweth, wherby all the smoake through the winde, may be so carried against the violence of the rust falling, which by that meanes shall beare of the noysome occasion of the ayre. Helps against rust.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you make a smoke with the burning of Creuises Oxe or goates dung, or chaffe, the same to be a most present remedye against the rust. And certaine Greeks write, that a garden sowen with beans, both within and without, they do defend it from being harmed by frosts. A secret against frost.

Bericius and Anatolius write, that if you soake the rootes or leaues of either the wilde Cowcumber or Colloquintida boyled in water, & sprinkle your hearbes taken with rust, before the rising of the Sun, that the same recouereth them. Helps against rust that falles before the sun rising.

And the said Anotalius writeth, that if you steep your seeds in the water of the rootes of the wilde Cowcumber, before you sow them, that the same defendeth them frō all harmes of the wormes, flyes and all other creeping things.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you plante the Bay trée in many places of your garden, that the same putteth away the harmes of the rust, as hath often bene experienced.

And that burning heate harme not your Garden, which commonly commeth about the Canicular or Dogge-dayes, Plinie willeth to burne and make a smoak of three Creuises about your ground and vnder your Vine, as a good remedie against the same. A secret against burning heat

Certaine helpes and secretes against the Garden woormes, the greene flyes, the Canker woormes, the great Moths: the Snayles with shelles and without shelles that harme and gnawe aswell the leaues of Trees and Fruites, as the Hearbes and young Plantes comming vp. Cap. 13.

Garden grounds harmed by diuers iniuries.

AND forasmuch as it is apparant vnto all mens eyes, that the hearbes and young plantes after they be come vp, be diuerslye in danger to certaine small beastes and creeping thinges, liuing as well vnder the earth as aboue, that cause the plantes oftentimes to become weake, if they be not speedily loked vnto for remedye. And such also is that great encrease and abundance of them, that by all meanes possible that canne bee deuised either with fire, smoake or Iron, they may not after be vtterly expelled and driuen out of the Garden, being there once lodged in the ground: Wherefore that these anoiances to the garden, may by diligent industry of the Gardner be the better destroyed, that he may receiue the more commoditie and profit by his hearbes, floures and rootes, therfore shall heere be declared, such speciall remidies as the ancient and late writers haue inuented, and by their diligence practised, vnto the great comfort of the Gardener, and to him that hath delight in a Garden.

A hard expelling somtime of creeping thinges out of Gardens.

Remedies against the garden wormes.

And first Africanus, in his learned worke of Husbandrie, writeth, that if you smoak the holes of the wormes with drye Ore or Cowdung, that way which the winde then bloweth, that it dooth expel them from the eating and gnawing after of your hearbes. And Plinie writeth, that the pure mother or some of the oyle, without the mixture of salte, sprinkled on the wormes, doth also driue them away.

And if the wormes hange to the rootes of the plantes or hearbes through the naughtines of the dung, then weed the beds and plantes very diligently.

And Frontius writeth, that the hearbes shall not be harmed of the Garden flye, if that by a naturall meanes, you do plant or sowe in many places amongst your hearbes, the hearbe named Rochet.

And

And Anatolius in his husbandry instructions writeth, that the garden flies be killed with the sprinckling of sharpe vinegar, mingled with the iuice of Henbane on them And the like dooth the sodden liquor or water of the hearbe named Fleabone, as writeth Pamphilius the Greeke, in which the hearb named Nigella Romana, hath for a time bene soaked & sprinkled, kill the garden flies.

Remedies against the greene flies of the Garden.

And if you will not haue your séeds after the sowing, to be gnawen or eaten of any creeping things in the Garden, then before the sowing soake your seeds in the iuice of the hearbe named Sengréne or houseleke, as before was taught.

And *Anatolius* writeth, that the séeds shal not be gnawen, if you sowe or set them in the ground, in the shell of a Tortoise.

And Palladius writeth, that your potherbs shal not engender noysome wormes, or other creaping thinges, if that you dry the seedes before the sowing in a Tortoise shinne, or els set the hearbe Mints in many places, and especially among the Coleworts: as the like as some write, doth a litle quantitie of the bitter fitches or tares (sowne amongst) preuaile, especially if the same bee sowne amongst the Radishes, and rapes. Also the auncient writers wil, that the Fiches, which be a graine like to Peason, be sown in many places among the pot-hearbes, for a surer defence against all creeping things.

And Frontius writeth, that if the pothearbs be sprinckled with the brine made of goose dung, that the same defendeth hearbes from being gnawen of the Garden wormes, or other creeping things.

And now as touching the Caterpillers which the Grákes named Palmer wormes, that greatly annoy and spoyle the hearbs of the Garden: Plinie willeth, that you sprinckle the Plants or trées with bloudy twigs, as a speciall remedy to driue them so away.

Diuerse helps and secrets against the Caterpillers.

And other ancient writers teach, that if you haue River Creuises in many places of the garden, that the same dooth likewise driue away the Caterpillers.

And certaine others will, that you sprinckle the plants with the dewe of that water, in which the vine ashes haue bene soked, as a present remedy.

And there be other which will, that about the bodies and armes of the trees, ye kindle and make a smoke of brimstone and vnsleaked lime together, as a speciall remedy to driue them away.

And there are certaine other, which first do soften the séds in that Lie which is drawne and made of the Fig ashes, before they sow them in the ground, or rather in the blod of the Caterpillers, or in the iuice of the hearbe named the houseléke: and some will also, to sprinckle of the fig ashes vpon the Caterpillers.

And certaine rather will, that you sow his hearbe in fashion to a big Onion, and named of the Apothecaries *Squilla* in the Garden, or hang the same here and there about the Garden, for a present remedye agaynst the Caterpillers.

And some will, to burne the Toad stoles or Muchroms, which grow out of the Walnut trée, and bee stiffe and hard, that with the strong sauour of them, they may so be destroyed.

And some doe write, that a sauour made of the only dung of Backes, in many places of the garden, will destroy them. And if the Caterpillers do yet withstand these former helps, then vse this practise here vnder taught: which is, that you take Ore pisse, and the mother of Oyle, and mix them equally together, after set the same ouer the fire vntill it be hote, and taking the same of, let it cole, which being cold, sprinckle on the pothearbs and trées, and the same shall destroy them, as Anatolius writeth of experience.

And Palladius writeth, that if you burne small bundles of Garlike blades without heads, making a smoke with them, in the allies and paths of the Garden about, that the same will flea them with the onely sauour.

And certaine Gréke writers will, that you take a few of the Caterpillers in the next Garden or Orchard, and seeth them

them in water with the hearbe Dill, which being cold, sprinkle on the hearbes or trees, and in such places where they be, and the same shall destroy them. But take verie diligent heede, that none of this water fall, either on your face or hands. A practise of the greek husbandmen against the Caterpillers.

And some will, to burne of Galbanum, or the hoones of goats, or the Harts horne, making a smoake in the garden, which way the winde then bloweth, as a speciall remedy to flea them.

And there be some which will, that you steepe the Vine ashes in water for three daies, and after sprinkle plentifully of the same on your hearbes and trees, as a present remedie to driue away Caterpillers. A singuler sprinckling stock to driue away the Caterpillers

And Diophanes the greeke writeth, that the Moths which kil the lekes may be destroyed on this wise, if that you take the maw of a weather sheepe new killed, not washed, but hauing all the filth hanging thereon, which lightly couer or poulder with earth in that place, where they most swarm in the garden, and after two daies, you shall finde a maruelous companie of Moths and other flies heaped thereupon, which either carry away, or bury very deepe in that place, that they rise not again. And when you haue thus done but twise or thrise together, you shall vtterly destroye them for comming any more.

And against snailes, both with shell and without shel, the new mother or some of oyle sprinckled on them, doth greatly preuaile, and the like doth soot of Chimnies, scattered on the beds, driue them away. Helps against snailes.

And Iulius Fronto writeth, that all pot hearbs be greatly holpen and defended from noysome Beastes, if by them the hearb Rocket be either sowen or set. A secret for pothearbs out of Iulius Fronto.

Certaine

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden Moles, Pismires, Gnats, Flies with the long hinder legs, Breses, Field Mice, Backes, Serpents, Frogs, and Todes, which gnawe, harme, and destroy, as well the trees and fruites, as other hearbes and floures. Cap. 14.

Why Moles are a disquiet and griefe to Gardners

AND for that ỹ Moles in many places of gardens, through their digging and casting vppe, doe leaue bare both the rootes, and yong plantes comming vp, to the vttermost destruction of the good encrease of them, which by that meanes doth not a little disquiet or grieue the Gardener, to see his painefull labours so to bee subuerted and come vnto ruine, contrarie to his expectation hoped after. And therefore such helpes against their malice, as either the auncient Greeks, or the Latinistes haue written of, shall here at large bee vttered.

a proper secret to driue away Moles in the earth.

And first the Greeks write, that the Moles wil at no time dig or cast vp in the garden where the hearbe named Tickwood, otherwise in Latin Palma Christi, doth either grow of their owne accord in that ground, or brought otherwise by hap, and there set.

And both Paxamus & Sotion the Greeke, write, that if you take a walnut, and bore a hollow hole, filling the same afterward with Chaffe, Rosen, and Brimstone, and caused to smoake, put the same into the bigger and newer hoale of his comming forth of the earth, stopping diligently all his other hoals, and that none of the smoke passe forth. And in such sort leaue that one and bigger hole wide open, that the aire may the better driue the smoake into the earth, which after the Mole feeleth the sauour thereof, doth either forthwith runne some other way from thence, or is found choaked or dead in the earth.

An easie practise of the ancient husbandmen in taking of Moles

And some write, that you may take all the Moles in your garden by an easie maner If that you get a quicke Mole, put the same into a deepe earthen pot, setting the edge to the erth which Mole, after a while feeling himselfe thus inclosed, will

cry

crie out, and after the other Moles in that ground doe thus heare him cry, they will hastily drawe neere vnto him, and minding to helpe him forth, wil so fall into the pot. And now by this easie meanes, if you wil, you may take and destroy all the Moles in your garden.

And some wil, to take the rot of the white Nose wort, making the same into fine ponder, and after mixing it with barly meale, to worke it together with milke & wine, and after make it vp into little balls, which lay within the holes of the Moles. And Albertus writeth, that if you stop the hoales of Moles with either Garlike, Onions, or Lekes, that any of these, doe either force him forth with to run from that place, or to cast vp a new in some other place.

Diuers special remedies either to kill or driue away Moles.

And some will, to bring vppe Cats to runne onely in the Garden, for the better driuing of them awaye. And some also doe bring vpp Weesels tame, letting them afterrunne vppe and downe in the Garden, and to runne into the hoales of the Moles, which through their kincke in hunting after the Moles, do euen so driue them out of the ground.

A proper hunting and driuing away of Moles out of the garden.

And some wil, to fil the mouth of the hoale with the ponder of the red marking stone, or red Oker, mired with the iuice of the wild Cowcumber. And some will to take Galbanum, and Brimstone, filling a Walnut shel there-with, and to make a smoake into the hoale, which so driueth them away.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike the lowar part of your trée with redde Oker, mired with Tarre, and hang a Jay therby, that the same doth so gather Pismiers al in one place, that you may after easily destroy them.

And certaine others will, to annoint the stalks of Plants and bodies of trées, with the Dile made of Lupines, or rather with the ponder of Lupines, mired with Dile. And sundrie write, that they may be destroyed with the only mother and some of Dile sprinckled on them.

And Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the great heape and swarmes of the Pismiers gathered togither, if in-

A meruailous practice aɡēſt Piſmires

to their heap you put the hart of an Oule: and if the piſmires runne and ſtray abroad in your garden, then ſtrow or ſift Aſhes in the alleis, and pathes about where they run. And it dooth likewiſe auaile againſt their ſtraying abroad, if that you beſtrike the pathes about where they runne, either with bright white chalke, or with oyle, as hath beene experienced.

And the ſaide Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the Piſmires, if into their holes you ſprinckle of the powder of the Organye and Brimſtone mixed together, or if you fill and ſtuffe the holes of the Piſmires with the powder made of dryed Oyſter-ſhelles burned, it dooth likewiſe deſtroy them.

And Paxamus writeth, that if you take of the piſmires, and burne of them in the middle of thy Garden, that the reſt will forſake the ground. And the ſaid Author writeth, that if you make a ſtinke with Roſen before their holes, they will not after come forth, but forſake the place.

Other practiſes againſt the Piſmires.

And he alſo writeth, that if you compas them with white woll, chalke or red oaker, or els ſtrewe round about them the hearb named Organy, but eſpecially thoſe waies where they haue common courſe: For then neither will the Piſmires come nere that plant where it is, nor runne vp that tree which is bound about the body with this hearb: ſo much they hate the ſauour therof.

And Palladius writeth, that if you beſtrike or annointe the plants and trees with red oaker, tarre, and butter mixed togither, that the ſame driueth them away.

And certaine Greeke writers will, to annoint the plants and trees with the gall of a Bull, the mother of Oyle, and tar tempered together, which ſo driueth them away. And they alſo write, that if you poure of the proper dropping of the Poppie mixed with Vineger into their holes, the ſame dooth kill them.

Alſo ſome write, that you may deſtroye the Piſmires with the onely ſauour of the ſtinke or ſmoake, of the wilde Cowcumber brent.

And

And certain wil, that if the pismires crép vpon your trées to make broder round rings about the bodies and arms of the trées, with white chalke: for that by twice or thrice, or ofter so doing, you shall cause them to forsake the creeping vp any more on those trées. That pismires creepe not on your trees.

And Plinie writeth, that you may destroy the pismires, if that you stop their holes, either with sea mud, or with ashes, if they be not wet. And yet the hearbe Heliotropion (which some suppose to be the Marigold) by strawing the leaues on the holes, doe chiefly destroy them. And certaine write, that the water, in which the vnbaked tiles hath bene soked, poured vpon the holes, doth destroy them. And now these instructions against the Pismires, shall here suffice. A secret of Pliny for the killing of Pismires.

And Democritus in his rules of husbandry writeth, that the Gnats which haunt and fed in gardens, may bee driuen away, with the only burning and making of a smoke of that hearbe Calamynte. Sundry remedies for the driuing away of Gnats.

And the said Democritus writeth, that the decoction of the hearb Organny in vinegar, and sprinkled on them doth likewise driue them away, as hath bene experienced.

And the Gnats also be chased away, if that you steepe the hearbe Rue, or hearbe grace in water, and sprincle the same on the beds where they haunt: and they be also destroied and chased away with the smoke made of Galbanum, brimstone, and Comin mixed together, and likewise chased away with the decoction of the hearbe named Flebane, sprinckled on the beds.

And certaine Greekes write, that the stalkes of Hempe-flouring, doe driue away the swarme, or huge companye of Gnattes: and the like dooth the smoake made of the Dre dung. A sprinckle made of the hemp flouring to driue away Gnats.

And Palladius writeth, that the pouder of the root of Elecampane, mixt with the ashes of horns burned, and the same sprinckled on the beds, doth driue the gnats away: and Pliny writeth, that a smoke made onely of the gum named Galbanum, doth driue way the Gnats.

And Byritius the Greéke writeth, that if you sprinckle the

Certaine practises of the greeks against the flies with the long hinder legs.

place most swarming of those flies (with the long hinder legges) the pouder of Rosewoorte, Oxpiment, and milke mixed together, that the same wil either kil them, or driue them quite away: and the same Britius writeth, that Allom with the hearbe Organnie steeped in milke, and the same sprinckled on the beds and hearbs, letteth them from touching those hearbes after. And the Bay leaues or hearbes beaten to pouder, with the rot of the blacke Rosewoort, & tempered either in milke, or in water and hony mixed together, the same sprinckled on the hearbes, doth either slea them, or driue them quite away.

A secret for the driuing away of those flies.

And certaine Greekes write, that if you burne of those flies in the middle of your Garden, that the sauour of them wil driue away the rest: and the like dooth the wetting of some of them, and after couering them there with wet mud.

And Britius writeth, that the flies with the long hinder legs wil not after touch any of those hearbes which be sprinkled with the water, wherein the Leeke or Centory hath bin steeped.

Didimus practise against the Breese.

And against the Breeses, (which bee flies that eate the corne as it groweth) and do besides much harme to hearbes. Didimus willeth to sow thée graines or cornes of mustard-séed, nére to the rot of such a trée, and among the hearbs eaten with them, which so driueth them away. And against the Field and Garden mice, Apuleus willeth to steepe your séeds before the sowing in an Ore or Cowes gall. And certaine will, to stoppe their hoales with the leaues of Rhododaphnes, for that when they séeke to come foorth and gnaw of those leaues, they after die.

Remedies against the garden and field Mise.

And certaine Greekes wil, to take the pouder made of the wilde Cowcumber, Henbane seedes, bitter Almonds, and blacke Rosewoorte, (of eache a like quantitie) and the same so worke together with oyle: which laid or put into the hoales of the Garden of Field mice, driueth them spédilie away. And Plinie writeth, that the Garden mice may bee driuen away, if you sprinckle the beds with the ashes of the

Weesel

Wéesel, or with that water sprinckled on the beds, in which a Catte hath bin washed. And the seeds also (before the sowing) steped in the gall of an Ore, dooth driue them from the eating of the seeds at any time after.

And Florentine writeth, that the Snake or Adder will not lodge or abide in that garden, where either Wormwod Mugwort, or Southernwod, be aptly planted in the corners, or round about the garden. And if they haunt any Garden, then with the smoake made of the drie Lilly rote, or Harts horne, or of the hodues of the Goate, they may speedily bee driuen away. And Democritus writeth, that if you cast the græne Oken leaues vppon either the Snake or Adder, that he dieth forthwith: or if any spitteth casting into their mouth opened. How snakes & adders may be kild

And Florentine writeth, that neither the Snake nor Adder will come nære that place, where either the fat of a Hart lieth buried, or the rot of Centorie, or the stone of Gagates, or the dung of a Byte lieth.

And you may driue away any venemous créping thing, if that you take the pouder made of Nigella, Pelitory, Galbanum, Harts-horne, Brimstone, Pecendanum, and the hoofes of the goat, mixing all these together by equall portions, and wrought together with vineger: make litle bals of the same, and with the same make a smoke, and it driueth al forthwith to forsake the ground vpon the sauour thereof. How any place may be free from the snake or adder.

And they hate all strong sauours, which bee either made with Garlike or Onion blades, and such like: and the flame of fire also, which greatly dimmeth their sight. And the Adders do likewise loue the Sauine trée, the Iuie tree, and the Fenell, as the Toades doe the Sage, and the Snake the hearbe Rocket. Vnder what the adders and snakes ioy to be.

And the Snakes and Adders (of al other things) do most hate the ashe trée, for that they cannot abide the touching of the long shadow in the morning, nor that in the euening, but run farre from it. And Pliny writeth a marueilous matter of the ash trée, for if a snake (saith he) be compassed about with the græne ash trée leaues, and a fire made in the middest, that he The naturall contrariety of the ash and the snake or adder worthy to be noted.

wil rather run into the burning fire, thē towards the leaues somuch he hateth the ash trée.

Of the Ferne against snakes or adders.

And certaine write, that a smoke made of the dry Ferne burned, dooth driue away Snakes and Adders out of that ground.

And Palladius writeth, that the snake and Adders, and all other venemous vermine be driuen away with euery sharpe and stincking sauour fumed abroad.

How toades may be driue away and killed.

And the Todes may be driuen away and killed (as write the Grékes and Latines) with those helpes and remidies, which wee haue before taught, in the remedies against the snakes and adders, and therfore to recite those againe, were here superfluous.

Africanus practise for the driuing away, and killing of the Backes.

And Africanus writeth, that the backs will not fly vp and downe in that garden, where through the wales and pathes you hang of the boughes or braunches of the Plane trée. And they be also killed with the onely smoak made of Iuy branches in the alleis about.

And against the chirping of the frogs, which perhaps sém to disquiet the Gardner in the sommer nights, vse this helpe and secrete written of the Gréke Africanus, which willeth to set a bright light before them, or to hang a bright Lanterne light on some trée, that the same light may shine vpon them like the light of the Sunne, which causeth them by the sight thereof, to cease their chirping, as hath beene tried by sundry oftentimes.

Now (gentle reader) I haue here vttered those special incommodities which happen in Gardens, vnto which I haue adioyned the most proued & true experiences, against those euils, out of the best Authours, both of the olde and new writers in this Art: least that any (hauing delight in Gardning) should be frustrate of these helpes. And thus an end of this first Booke.

(·.·)

The

The second Booke instructeth diuerse maner of sowing, setting, and ordering of the most Pot-hearbes, floures, &c. with the care and secrets taught, aswell for the health of the bodie, as to the pleasure and delight of the eie.

NOw that I haue ended my first booke, such as it is: I minde heere to enter into the second. In which shall bee entreated of the diuerse manner, care, ordering, and diligence to bee bestowed, both in the sowing, setting, and remooning of the most Pot-hearbes, sweet smelling hearbes, and pleasant flowers, as well for the vse of the kitchen, as for pleasure to carrye in the hand, and otherwise to serue the pot. And these, by diligence of the author, gathered out of the treasures of the best writers of the Greeks and Latines in this Art: and experienced by the often practises of sundry skilfull Gardners in diuerse Realmes and Countries, vnto our great vse and commoditie. And such worthy secrets also taught in these matters, as the like hath not bene vttered in the English tongue. And for that I meane not to sæme long in rehearsall of the benefit of these vnto mans health & delight: I minde therefore (as a number of writers do) to entreat first of that well knowen hearbe, both vnto the Cittie and Countrey, named the Lettuce: whose nature, care, properties, and benefite also to the health, shall after appeare.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lettuce. Cap. 1.

AND first the Garden Lettuce (of which we mind hære to entreat (dooth delight to bee sowen in a fatte and well wrought ground, beeing dunged before, and moist at the sowing: for so it appeareth by the fourth day after the sowing,

so

so that the sæds be not otherwise burnt, and the ground vnfruitfull.

And it may also be sowne all the yeare through, if so be the ground be well dunged and dressed, and the sædes often watered, for so they come the faster & plentifuller vp. And those sædes which you sow in the harueſt, may well be remooued and set againe in the moneth of December, and in beddes (if you will) with other hearbs: for so it well abideth the colde winter time, and is also much comforted thereby, for that it may well agrée and come vppe with other hearbes, vnto the Seed-time. And to make it spread of breadth in the growing, you must then remoue each from other, when as fiue leaues be sprung vppe, and set them a good space asunder, whereby they may spread the larger: and the pressing downe of them, must especially be done in warme daies, in lightly cutting the leaues about, and after laying the shardes of Tiles, or tufts of earth to presse them downe.

And least the Lettuce should grow hard, it ought to be often set, and plentifully watred, for by that means the leaues will grow both tenderer and softer, so that the rootes before bee steeped and couered with soft dung in the new setting againe.

And both Palladius and Columella write, that if through the beds, and round about them, bee often strewed the riuer or sea Sand, that leaues will so become white, if the leaues before bee gathered and tied vppe togeather. And to make the Lettuce growe low by the ground, and to bee thicke and broad in the head, you must then remoue and set them when as they be growen vp an handfull high, and often clippe the tops of the leaues round about, and in the new setting again scrape faire the rootes of the Lettuce, and after dip them in soft and new Cow dung, and set them so in the ground, which after the setting, often and plentifully water, and in the growing vppe alwaies keepe vnder, by clipping the toppes of the leaues, and laying tile shardes on the heades of them, for by that meanes they increase into a breadth, and not to a height.

And

And they be also made the swæter in eating, if in the growing they be often remoued and set againe, and that in the setting, as they begin to grow vp in some height, that then the leaues to bee tyed vp close together, and being growen a little more in height, then to presse them downe, by laying tilehards or some other things somwhat waighty on them And to make them pleasant of smell, take and put the sædes within the swæte Citrone sæd, and set them so in the ground or els kæpe the sæd (for certaine daies) in swæte Rose water. And here note, that of this, the leaues become the tenderer, if the rootes (before the setting againe) be dipped in newe Cow dung (as is aboue said) and watred often with running water, or for two daies before the plucking the leaues close bound together.

The Phisicke helpes.

And now as touching the Phisick helps of this herb, you shall first vnderstand that the same is colde and temperately moiste in the second degree. And *Ægineta* writeth, that the Lettuce dooth manifestlye coole and moisten and prouoke sleep; and as it doth nourish like other pothearbs, so it doth cause good blood in man.

And yet the often eating rawe of this hearb, doth harme colde stomakes, and causeth dimnes of sight: therfore they ought oftner to be eaten sod then rawe.

But the cholerick, may as safely eate them raw as sodden, and finde commoditie to the body by eating of them rawe. And the eating of them while they be yong is more profitable to the stomacke, & encreaseth milke in womens brestes: but when the same is growen to be hard in eating, then it is both drie and bitter, and through his heate, then the more opening, and yet doth the eating then engender euill blood, and so causeth harme often to such as eate therof, as by hindring the sight, and corrupting the matter of Sperme. And the eating of them whiles they be yong & tender, doth help an ague, as wel sodden, as being eaten rawe.

And sod with vineger and a little saffron put in the same,

doth help both the stopping of the Liuer and milt. Also eaten rawe, or sod, and beeing mixed with vineger and sugar, doth open the Liuer and milt, and causeth good blood, and helpeth the tertian ague.

And the Lettuce sodden and mixed with oyle Oliue, doth heale the dropsie beeing eaten with meate. And a plaister made of Lettuce, with oyle Oliue, dooth mightily asswage hot impostumes. And the seedes eaten of milch women in meate, doth increase milke, and amendeth the sight.

Also the seedes drunk in wine, do procure sleep. And the seedes brused and drunk, do stay the often imaginations of the lust in the sleep, and abateth the courage therof. And it prouoketh sleep, if the seedes brused and tempred with the milke of a woman childe and the white of an egge, be laide plaister wise on all the forhead and temples. And the powder of the seedes mixt with the milke of a wowan child, do prouoke and cause sleepe. And the like the seedes woorke to him which hath an ague, giuen him to drink with warme water. And the seedes giuen in drinke, do for the most part speedily help the shedding of nature. And he which drinketh the iuce of Lettuce, fasting, shall not be drunk that day.

And the Lettuce plucked vp by the rootes, with the left hand, before the sunne rising, & the same laid vnder the couerings of the bed, the sick body not knowing therof: doth after cause the person to sleepe. And if fiue leaues, three or one leafe, be laid priuily vnder the bolster of the sick body, but in such sorte that the leafe or leaues plucked off the next stalk, be laid beneath and vnder his feet, and the leaues plucked off from the top of it be laid vnder his head: they cause sleep as before said. And the often eating of Lettuce, is both dangerous to such women as be apt to conceiue with child, and such as be with child (as ancient men write) for they do not only cause barrenes, but those which then be with child, shall after be deliuered of children farre vnlike their Fathers in that they shalbe both raging in minde, and fooliſh in wit: And therefore the much vse of them, is to be eschewed of such women, euen as they would from a furious dogge or adder,

adder, whose biting they greatly feared. Also the very often eating of Lettuce, doth greatly harme such as be short winded, flegmatick persons, & such as spit blood. And although the very often eating of the raw or sodden Lettuce be no les dangerous then the hearb Hemlock: yet we may often eate of them in the sommer, rather as a medicine then for any norishment, as both to coole & moisten the stomack. And the eating of them doth make men soluble, in that through the coldenes and moistnes of them, they so coole & temper the excessiue heat of the liuer. And some write, that the eating of Lettuce at night after other meales, doth the better procure sleep that night following.

And as the manner of the preparation of the Lettuce (now in our time) is with vineger, salt and oyle, wherby to cause a better appetite to the meat, then to be eaten, & both to temper the heate of the blood, and mittigate the heate of the liuer and hart: and yet the often vse of this doth greatly hinder the increase of sperme, as is aboue said.

These hitherto of the Phisicke helps & properties of the Garden Lettuce.

Of the ordring, care and secrets both of Endiue and Succory.

Chap. 2.

THe Endiue and Succory haue a like ordring and dressing, sauing that the Endiue better abideth the coldenes of winter.

And of this in colde Countries it may be sowen nereft the end of haruest, and it will become white in the growing, if the same be sprinckled with sand, and often watred, and that with great shewers of rayne, if it be after couered and washed, lying on the sand, for that it delighteth in moisture and loose ground.

And after that foure of the leaues be sufficiently sprung vp, then may the same be remoued, and set againe in a well dunged place.

For there be some writers, which will the rots to be dipt in fresh Cow dung, before the setting againe in the earth.

The Phisicke helps of Endiue.

Endiue cooleth and drieth in the second degree: and the leaues and seeds bee vsed in medicines, but the root hath no property at all in phisicke. And the greene leaues bee profitable, but the drie leaues haue no vse in medicines, for that they then worke nothing at all.

And Endiue comforteth the heart, in that it cooleth and delaieth the burning therof, against the diseases of the liuer, without harme, in that by nature, it hath such a qualitie and propertie of it selfe. And against that disease called the kings euill, take the sirrope of the Endiue simply, with the which, mix the water of the decoction of Harts tongue, which giue to the patient to drinke, for it is a singuler remedy.

And the iuice of the leaues annointed on burning pushes doth qualifie the heat of them.

And the hearbe bruised and laid plaisterwise on hote impostumes doth mightily helpe.

And the hearb laid without on the side, doth delay and cease the heat of the liuer.

And if the green hearb cannot be had, then apply the seeds laying them brused on such hot griefs, which greatly helpe.

And the Endiue may in like maner be eaten as the Lettuce as either any way be eaten raw, or sodden with meat. And the Endiue sodden with vinegar, dooth bind the belly. And brused with vinegar, and that laid on the left pap, doth help the Cardiak passion without doubt. And it helpeth the holy fire, hot impostumes, and hot swellings, if the same be bruised and mixed with Ceruse and vinegar, and so laid plaisterwise on such places. And the iuice of it mixt with vinegar & Rose water, dooth ease the paines of the head comming of heat: and the hearbe drunke with wine, doth amend both the default and and griefe of the liuer and bladder.

And in the spitting of bloud, and the excesse of Sperme, it helpeth by drinketh of it two or three daies together. And al such partes which may be holpen by cooling, may with the iuice of it, the Ceruse and vinegar mixed together, and so annointed on those places, greatly auaile.

And the distilled water of Ediue, drunke vnto the quanti-

tity

tity of two ounces at a certaine time, and that morning and euening, doth helpe the straightnes and stopping of the brest.

And in the same maner and quantity drunke, is profitable to women with childe, for that it strengtheneth them, and amendeth their senses, and the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of foure or fiue vnces at a time, dooth helpe the plague, putting away the kings euill, ceasing thirst, being more largely drunke of, and qualifieth the burning of the liuer. And it helpeth against the paine of the side, and the pricking which is felt about the hart, if there be drunk three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening. These hitherto of the properties of Endiue.

The Phisicke helpes of Succory.

Succory is of a cold and dry quality, & somwhat more than the Endiue. But *Aegineta* writeth, that it cooleth and drieth in the first degree, and hath the quality of binding.

And now this hearbe sodden with wine, & eaten with meat profiteth the stomacke, and helpeth digestion, and the flowers bruised with the Roses, and laid plaister-wise vppon the gout, doth forthwith ease the paine therof. And this plaister laid on the holy fire, doth delay the great heat thereof. And a potion made of the iuice of Succorie, Endiue, and the harts tongue, mixed together with sugar, and after boiled with a little water and vinegar together, and if any vse the same oftentimes, it doth helpe the stopping of the liuer, and milt: so that after the same be taken, the purging pils of Rubarb, and (after that) the same comforter, which they name the three Sanders, prepared of the Apothecaries. And the iuice of the Succorie boyled, dooth loose the belly, and helpeth the stomacke, the liuer, and the kidneis. And it putteth away the pestilent pushes, if linnen cloathes dipped in the water of it, bee laid on those pushes. And the hearbe brused with the root, and of the same, made flat round cakes, which after being mixed and dissolued in Rose water, annoint any scabbed place there-with, and it will both heale, and make the skinne faire after. And the flowers of Succorie, cast among a heape of Pismires or Ants, wil soone after become so red as bloud.

And the flower of Succory gathered in the morning, and after distilled in *Balneo Maria*, dooth helpe diuerse diseases of the eies: as the pinne and web, the mist of the eies hindering the sight, the vlcers of the eies, and many other diseases of the eies.

These hitherto of the properties of Succorie.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the hearbe Blete. Cap. 3.

And first of the Blete, there be two kinds, the one red or blacke, and the other white: for the red in the growing becommeth so red both in leaues and stalks, as the scarlet in a maner, which after the longer growing, becommeth purple of colour, and in the end into a blacke colour, through which the same of some is named the blacke Blete. And the white groweth like to the white beets, both in the stalks and leaues being vnsauourie, and biteth very little, or of a small sharpenesse. And both kinds do wel spring vp in a garden, and that spædily.

And it may be sowen in any ground, but rather in a well dressed ground, and after the same be well sprung vp, it needeth not after to be wæded or stoned.

And yet some write, that the Blete ioyeth in a fat ground, being well turned with dung, for so they say it will best prosper. And when they be sprung vppe vnto their séeding, then they decay not after in that ground, for that they renue yérly through the falling of the séeds: so that if a man would, hée shall scarcely wæd them out of the ground, but that they wil continue many yeares after, without any further trauell. And Palladius thinketh it best to be sowne in March, and after it once prospereth (after the sowing or setting) it neuer decaieth, as he writeth.

The Phisicke helpes.

Blete which commonly men eat, is cold and moist in the second degree. And now the same is sometimes eaten with meat, so that it first be sodden in water, and fried with Oyle and butter, and after that seasoned with salt or vinegar, or veriuce, and then the eating of it in such sort doth litle harm,

if

if the same bee not often vsed. For by this experience hath bin noted sundry times, that the often eating of it (although in such sort prepared) doe cause vomiting, paine of the bowels and stomack, and the succouring of choller by fluxe. And a plaister made of it with Oile, and that laid on the place of the milt, doth helpe the griefe thereof: and by eating of this hearbe, as we haue aboue said, it doth loose the belly of propertie, when as the same is become costiue or bound, by any clammy matter. These hitherto of the properties of the Bleete.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the hearbe Spinage. Cap. 4.

Spinage is sowne very well in the moneth of September and October, to serue both in the winter time, and Lent following, in well dunged ground. And the Spinage also may be sowne alone in beds, the ground beeing fat and well turned in with dung. And when the same is well come vppe, then may you cut away the one halfe of the turfe at one time and the other halfe at another time. For so the vertue and commoditie of it will indure a long time.

The Phisicke helpes.

Spinage is colde and moist in the end of the first degree, and the same sodden and eaten with meat, dooth soften the hardnesse of the belly, and taketh away the paines and griefs both of the brest and lungs.

Also it nourisheth better than doth the Orach, as writeth *Sarapian*, for that it dooth qualifie choller, cleanse the body, and strengthen the stomake: and the decoction of this hearb drunke, expelleth the euill humors, and causeth easie drawing of breath. Both the often and daily eating of it with meat, doth engender Melancholie, like as the Lettuce doth. And whosoeuer shall haue greeuous paines in the backe, and a costiue bellie, let them eate of this hearbe sodden, and drinke, or suppe of the broth, and they shall haue ease and remedy in short time by Gods helpe.

And

And the hearbe helpeth the paine of the throte, comming of bloud and red choller. These hitherto of the properties of the Spinage.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Orach, or Arage. Cap. 5.

The hearbe named Orach or Arage may bee sowne from the beginning of the spring vnto Haruest: that is from Februarie, March, Aprill, and all other moneths following vnto haruest. But some of it is sowne in the moneth of December, in earth well trimmed and dunged, and the better it commeth vp, being thin sowne. Also it much delighteth to be often fed with plenty of moisture, and if the season bee drie, then in continuall moisture. And the seeds of the Orach may well be kept for foure yeares. But the seeds so soone as they be strawne or sown abroad, must be couered with earth. And the weedes growne among the young plants, must bee still an ende plucked vp by the rootes: And it requireth not to be remooued, yet the same groweth the better, if it be set thin: and Palladius willeth it to be sowne in Aprill, and to be watered all hoat moneths thorow vnto haruest, for that it loueth in continuall moisture.

The Phisicke helpes.

The hearbe named Orach or Arage, as writeth *Aegineta*, doth moisten in the second degree, & cooleth in the first, of the which cause it softeneth the belly, and the seedes doe cleanse, through which they profit the stopping of the liuer, and helpe the Iaundies.

And the Arage bruised and mixed with hony, doth take away the paine of the gout, if the same bee laid plaister-wise on the griefe.

And *Macer* affirmeth the like, that the hearbe bruised and mixed with salt Nitter, Honie, and vinegar, and the same laid plaister-wise on a hot gout, dooth ease the raging paine thereof: and the seedes of the Arage bruised and drunke with water and honie mixed together, dooth helpe the sheading of the gall. Likewise the iuice laid on the holy fire, and on any other inflamation, doth cease & qualifie it. And this

hearbe

hearbe applied vnto the womans priuy place, dooth amend the euils within, and ceaseth forth-with the paine of the matrice: and sodden like vnto another pot hearbe, and so eaten, doth loose the costiuenes of the belly, proceeding of heate, and aswageth diuerse swellings. And the hearbe laid plaister wise on any member harmed either with thorne, splenter of wood, or naile, doth after draw out the same without paine, and healeth the wound. And this hearbe boyled with hony, and laid on rough nailes of the fingers, doth after loose them without pain: & the seeds often drunke, do help such which straightly fetch their wind: & the same also drunke, doth expel worms, and prouoketh vomiting. And the hearbe eaten, do helpe such as haue a hot liuer. And if any eateth the hearb Mercury and Arage, sodden together like pottage: the often eating of this potage, doth loose the belly, and take away the pinching paine of the blader. And if any often vse to eat of Arage, herb Mercury, & the beets sodden togither, he shalbe deliuered of the ague in short time after.

These hitherto of the hearbe Arage.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Beetes. Chap. 6.

Beets desire a fat earth, for so they best ioy: and the same which is eaten with meat, may be sowen in the months of December, Januarye, Februarye and Marche, yea and all the yeare through (in a manner) it may be sowne, if the ground before be well dressed, and turned in with dung. And when they be come vp thicke togither, then may they be remoued and set thinner a sunder, but rather they ought then to be remoued, when as four or fiue leaues be sprung vp, and at the setting againe be dipped in new cowdung, for by that meanes they growe white. And they delight also to be often remoued and digged about, for so they prosper the better: & a man may sow them in that ground where mellons, citrons or gourds be, and when they be a little come vp, then to ward them often, that they may appeare to growe alone. And those Beetes which be sowen for seede, be aptest sowen in the moneth of August, and remoued after the month of Januarye, in the furrowes or lowe places of the garden, for so

they bring forth the better seedes. And note that the Beets bring forth no seedes of any value in the first yare, but better in the second yare, and best in the third yare, which then ought to be reserued either to eate or otherwise. And these seedes endure for four yeeres in good effect.

The Phisick helps.

Beetes are colde & moist in the third degree, and engendreth good blood, and the white hath the propertie to purifie and cleanse all the euill humours of the body. And the head washed with the water in which the white Beetes are sodden, doth cleanse the head of the Dandrie, or that like to branne on the head: and the often eating of this hearb is not good, for that it encreaseth euill humors aswell in healthfull as sicke persons: and the hearbe is better cõmended sodden then rawe for the stomacke. And sodden with mustardseed doth help the disease of the splene: and the iuce of it dooth quallifie the holy fire. And the roote of the Beete sodden, if of the same be dropped three or four drops hot into the ears doth help the paine of them. And the iuce of the Beete taken with the seedes of Commine or Dil, doth after put away the gripings of the belly, & the iuce drawne vp by the nose with the oyle of bitter Almonds, doth purge the head: And the iuce rubbed on the gummes, doth cease the raging paine of the teeth. And this hearb profiteth by medicine, for it nourisheth little, and by much eating of it, it doth gnawe & torment the stomack. And the Beete groweth broad, if before it be growen vp with a stalke there be laid some broad slate stone or tyle to make it growe into a breadth, through the waight laid on it. These hitherto of the properties of Beets.

Of the ordring, care and secrets of Coleworts. Chap. 7.

The Coleworts come vp in euery aire, and may be sowen or remoued all the yeare through, in which time the ground shall not be frozen or so much dryed, that it cannot be digged or dressed. And these seedes also continue and may be kept for four yeares, & they also ioy in a mean fat ground,

dunged

dunged and digged: But it abhorreth the cliffe clay and grauelly ground, and refuseth also the chalkie and sandy ground And it ioyeth in dung laid about the rot, and commeth well forward by weeding, and the stronger it weareth if it be well couered about with earth. And it delighteth both colde and raynie Countries. And when fiue leaues be come vp, then may it be remoued, but you must bestrike the rote before with softe Cow-dung: and you may remoue it twice, when as it is in the greatest leaues, which so causeth it to growe the bigger and to yeelde the more seedes. And if you can, let the same be done in a warme day if it be in the winter time, and toward the euening if you do the same in the sommer.

And those also which be sowen in December, February, March, Aprill and May, may serue all the sommer and winter, vntill they are killed by long frosts and ouermuch colde, And not only the yong Coleworts set in March or Aprill, but also those which are set in June, July and August, shall be in winter great, so that they be set alone where nothing els is, and that in the growing the heades or tops of the leaues be often clipped and cut off, which so letteth their growing into height, and maketh them growe into a broadnes and thicknes in the head. And the thinner they be set, the bigger they will be: and therfore they must be set three foote asunder.

Also take heed that you couer the Coleworts well about with earth in the setting, for by lying bare of the earth, the plant sone after dyeth.

And now all these before written, both in the ordring, dressing, and nature of it, may likewise be vnderstood of the Cabadge to be ordred and vsed.

The Phisicke helps

Coleworts be colde and moist in the second degree, although of *Auicen* thought to be colde and drie. And now against the hardnes of making water, take of Colewortes, which put into scalding water, and boyling them a little, so that they be halfe rawe, and after powring the water almost cleane from them, vnto which put a little oyle, salte,

and commine, and after heat the same togither a little more, and when this broth is somwhat colde, then sup of the same, and eate likewise of the Cole-worts so soone as it hath first sodden, and this dayly do vntill you be throughly holpen.

And against all swellings and all vlcers, bruse Coleworts which haue but yong & tender stalkes and leaues, those lay plaister wise on cankers, & it will both purge & heale them, which no other medicine of propertie doth, and yet before the same be laid on, the canker must be washed with warme water twice a day, and the same yong Coleworts brused and laid on twice a day. And with the same remedie also may be holpen loose and brused places, and both vlcers & cankers on the pappes, and if the same be often applyed and vsed as is aboue said. And if the vlcer be such that it cannot abide the sharpnes therof, then may it be mingled with barly meal and so laid plaister wise on. And the rawe Coleworte eaten with the hearb-grace or Rue, and the hearb Coliander shred togither, or a little salte and barly meale with Oximell mixed togither, and with all to annoint the greeued place, doth heale the gowt, and helpe the ache of the ioyntes in short time.

And for deafenes of the eares, bruse the same hearbs with wine, and the iuce pressed out, drop warme into the ear, and the pacient shall finde ease shortly after. And the Colewort sodden in pleasant wine, and that drunk, bringeth down the tearmes in women.

And the iuce of the same hearb mixed with the purest hony, doth help certain pains of the eies, if the same be dropped in the corners of them. And the iuce drunk for 40. dayes with white wine, doth cure both the iaundice & the disease of the milt, as hath bene experienced. And three partes of the iuce of this hearb, and two partes of allom infused in vineger and mixed togither, doth heale both the foule scruines and leapry by annointing therupon.

And the iuce of the Colewortes mixed with the meale of Fenigreeke and vineger, and that laide plaister-wise or annointed on the gowte aches of the ioyntes and filthy

vlcers,

vlcers, doth eaſe, cleanſe, and heale them.

And the iuice alſo drawn vp by the noſe, doth purge the head. And the iuce of the Colewort, drunk with wine, doth helpe the bite of an Adder or Snake, and the iuice drunke with red wine, doth helpe the cough, & the iuice taken with oyle, and holden a good while in the mouth, dooth heale the bliſtering thereof. And the leaues of the Colwort eaten raw, do make a perſon ſleep wel without dreaming: and the green ſtalks and root of the Colwort roſted vnder the hot imbers, and tempered with olde barrowes greace (the ſame applied in plaiſter forme) doth heale the continuall paines and ſtitches in the ſides.

And eaten raw with vinegar, it dooth helpe the diſeaſed with the Splene, if the ſame bee often vſed.

And *Auicen* writeth, that eaten alone it dooth engender troubled bloud, and melanchollie, and his nouriſhment is ſmall, but the more and tenderer it is ſodden with fat fleſhe, or Hens fleſh, the better and wholſomer it is to be eaten.

And the firſt broth of this hearbe eaten, dooth ſoften the belly, and prouoketh vrine, but the eating of the ſubſtance, dooth binde the bellye. And if you will make drie a moyſt bellie, then after the hearbe hath boiled a while, and that the firſt water be poured forth, pour in quickly the other ſeething water, and ſo boile it new againe, vntill it become very ſoft and tender, and then eate of the ſubſtaunce thereof: ſeaſoned with pepper and ſalt, and ſo it bindeth the belly. But in eating the broth and ſubſtaunce together, it then woorketh temperatly, for the broth of the firſt ſeething Coleworts eaten alone, doth looſe the belly, and the ſubſtance tenderly ſodden and eaten, doth binde the belly. And by this appeareth, that the broth of the firſt ſeething of this hearbe, dooth looſe the belly, and the broth of the latter ſeething, doth bind the belly.

And *Plinie* writeth, that the leaues of the Colewortes bruiſed, and laid plaiſter-wiſe, doe maruellouſlie heale the woundes of Dogges: and the Coleworrt tenderly ſodden, and giuen to young Children to eat, dooth cauſe them the

sooner to goe on foote: and if you will drinke muche at a feast or banquet, and not to bee drunke (and to suppe well and freshly at the supper after) then eate before your going to supper, rawe Colewort leaues with vinegar, so muche as you will, and after you haue supped, then eat againe foure or fiue raw leaues, and they will after make you so fresh & hungrie, as though you had neither drunke nor eaten any thing at your supper before.

And of this, you may drinke so much wine as you list, and not bee ouer-come or drunke with VVine, yea, make great wagers vppon the same. And if any droppeth certaine droppes of wine into Colewoorts, boyling fast on the fire, it forth-with ceaseth (from boiling any more) and chaungeth the colour, euen as a dead thing in it selfe. These hitherto of the properties of the Colworts.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Land Cresses. Cap. 8.

THe Land Cresses, is an hearbe which the Germains do vse in their Sallets, but it may not bee eaten without cooling hearbes, like as the Lettuce, Sorrell, and Purcelain, which do so temper the fiery vertues, as Galen **writeth. And now the Land Cresses may bee sowen with Lettuce, for it so ioyeth and commeth vp the better, and dooth also delight in the often watring, and in a shadowie place, where the Sun doth shine little vppon, and hateth the dung. And** Palladius **willeth it to be sowen in the moneth of Ianuarie.**

The Phisicke helpes.

Land Cresses, as writeth *Plantearius*, is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and the seedes doe especially serue vnto the vse of medicine, and may well bee kept for fiue yeares. And the greene hearbe also is of great effect, beeing dried somewhat before the ministring of it: and now the seedes haue the properties of heating and drying vppe superfluous humours, and worketh in a manner so much as dooth the Mustard seed: and also the seedes bruised and drunken in wine dooth expell the dead yongling, and drunke with Vinegar, it leliuereth the swelling of the Splene, and eaten with the

best

best Honnie, they doe helpe the cough, and open the breſt: and the ſeedes chawed, and bolden in the mouth, doe helpe the Palſie of the tongue.

And the Creſſes may not be eaten alone, as we haue aboue ſaid, for that it diminiſheth mans ſtrength, and engendreth euill humours. Further, the ſeedes doe ſtay the diſtilling or running of the head without harme, if they be taken whole, and the pouder of the ſeeds drawne vp by the noſe, do purge the braine, and helpe the paines of the head, and the ſeedes helpe the palſie, if they be ſodden in wine in a litle linen bag, laid ſo hot to the palſie place as may bee ſuffered: and in the *lith*arge or ſleeping out of meaſure, let a ſneeze bee made of the pouder of the ſeedes, and blowne vppe. And againſt the paine of the hippe, and paines of the chollicke, proceeding of colde, boyle the ſeedes in a bag of wine, and lay that hot vnto the greeued place: and the like diſeaſe, and the ſtrangurie, the greene hearbe ſodden in wine and oyle together, and the ſame laid hot on the belly. And the hearbe drunke with Mints in VVine, dooth driue foorth both the long and flat wormes in beaſts.

And againſt the hardneſſe of fetching of breath, and the cough, ſeeth the ſeedes of Organy in pleaſant wine: And the iuice of the hearbe annointed, dooth ſtay the ſheading of the haires of the head: and the iuice of the hearbe dropped in the eare, dooth helpe the ache and paine in the teeth. And the often eating of this hearbe in Sallets, dooth giue a ſharpnes and readineſſe of wit. Theſe hitherto of the property of the Land Creſſes.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Parcely.

Cap. 9.

The parcely ſeed being new, is long before the appearance aboue the earth, for that it appeareth not in forty or fifty daies after the ſowing, as writeth Plinie: But yet the olde ſeedes doe ſooner come vp. And nowe where the ſeedes bee ſowen, they doe plentifully come vp, and thicke together, and after they once proſper in that ground, they ſeldome decay, but continuallie renue and increaſe in more plenty. And

the sæds also prosper, being sowen so well in cold, as hot places, and in what earth you list, as writeth Palladius. And yet it ioyeth to be continually watred, for that by the watering, it wareth the stronger, and commeth vppe the faster, and regardeth no aire nor ground, and the sæds as writeth Columella, may be sowne neere to ditches, or running waters, or wels: and if you wil haue it grow big, and haue large leaues, then as Florentius writeth, take so many sædes of the parsly as you can well hold betweene three of your fingers, and tie them together in a thin linnen cloth, which after set in dung and earth mingled together, & that put into a shallow hole, & it will after grow vp big and brode of leafe. And it will also grow of a maruelous bignes, if after it be come vp, you dig vp the earth round about it, and strew the chaffe of corne about the rot, and water the same often.

And if you will haue the leaues of the parcely grow crisped, then before the sowing of them, stuffe a Venice ball with the sædes, and beat the same well against the ground, whereby the seedes may so be a little bruised, and then sowe them in the ground: or when the Parcely is well come vp, goe ouer the bed with a waightie Roller, wherby it may so presse the leaues downe, or else treade the same downe with thy fæt.

And Palladius writeth, that the male of this hearbe hath the blacker leaues, and shorter roote, but the female hearbe hath more crisped and harder leaues, a bigger stalke, and is sharpe and hote in taste. And Palladius also willeth, the sæd of this hearbe to bee sowne in the monethes of Februarie, March, April, May, and that thicke together, and to be often watered.

The Phisicke helpes.

Parcely of the Garden, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third. And this parcely hath the propertie of piersing, and prouoketh the vrine: and both the seedes and roote preuaile against the stone. Also take the root of the parcelie, which being drie, bruise wel, and after drinke the same with pure wine, and it will cause a good braine, and good memo-

rie,

rie, and purge the blood. And the same drinke bringeth downe the tearmes of women: and the seedes eaten, do take away the swelling of the stomacke, helps the dropsie, drye and peirce the euill humours, and consume them. Also they cleanse the Liuer, and put away the paines of the loynes and bladder.

And a sallet made of Parcely, Sorrell, and vineger mixed togither, doth help the burning of the ague. And the hearb giuen either rawe or sodden to eate, doth help the stopping of the bladder, prouoketh vrine, cleanseth the kidneies, and draweth downe the tearmes, loseth the winde of the bodie, taketh away the gripings of the belly, and helpeth the swelling of the stomacke: note, the seedes be principall, the root next, and the leaues be the third in working.

And the Parcely laide in plaister-forme with bread, on that sore called the holy fire, doth heale the same. And aswel the leaues as rootes sodden, do help the straightnes of making water, and the disease of the kidneies. And *Plinie* writeth, that the seedes brused, and annointed with the white of an egge on the reines, or sodden in water and so drunke, doth help the disease of the kidneis. And the seedes giuen in white wine doth help the iaundise.

And neither women in childe-bed, nor milch nourses, nor women with childe, may eate Parcely mith their meats, for feare of hindring of conception, drying vp the milke in the brestes, and causing the yongling to haue the falling sikenes.

And Parcely throwen into Fish-ponds, doth reuiue and strengthen the sick fish.

And the chawing of the fresh and greene Parcely, doth cause one to haue a sweete smelling breth, or doth greatly amend a foule stinking breath: and therfore especially is this hearb verye commendable for women as haue strong and stinking breaths, both to chawe and carrie about them, that the strong sauour and smell of their breath may so be abated and also to yeeld forth a sweete breath.

These hitherto of the properties of Parcely.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Sperage Chap. 10.

THe Sperage (after the minde of the learned Grékes) ought to be sowen in fat and well dunged ground, in the spring time, and so many sædes sowen togither, as you may take vp with three of your fingers, and that each be set in little furrowes straight out and lightly covered with earth.

And Didimus writeth, that the Sperages ioy in fat and moyste ground, and well turned in with dung, and to be sowen in the spring time in furrowes three fingers long, and that there be sowen two or three graines togither, and that halfe a foote a sunder: and that there nede no other diligence and care in the first yeare, but onely to rake and digge vp the wædes cleane from them. And after forty dayes, the small rootes will be so folded and tyed one to an other, that they will seme to be fastned and ioyned togither in one, and this is named of the ancient Gardner, a Spunge.

And if the places shall be drye, in which you purpose to sowe the sædes, then steepe the seeds in soft cowdung laid in the bottom of furrowes, euen as though they lay *in ditches*. And in very moiste places the sæde ought to be sowen, from the toppe of the side or ridge of the bed, that the raine may so lightly slide off, and not water so much in the falling off. And when the sædes be thus sowen, then the Sperages which growe vp in the first yeare, ought to be broken off or cut away somwhat high, leaste by breaking off too nere the earth, (the yong rootes being yet tender) you plucke vp the whole Spunge withal. And it must continue growing in one place for two yeares, and be nourished with continuall dunging and often weeding.

And in the third, and other yéares after, the Sperage may so open the eyes of his branching: for vnlesse it be thus wrought, the stems broken off wil increase the eyes of the Spunge in such sorte, that the same will become as blinded, not suffering any Sperage after to shote and spring forth. And that shall you keep, out of which you haue gathered your sædes,

and

and set the Spunges in the winter, in ashes and dung tempered togither.

And there is an other maner of setting the Sperages by Spunges, which after two years growth ought to be remoued and set againe into some open and wel dunged place: and that the furrowes be made a foote distant a sunder, and not aboue nine fingers deepe, in which set the Spunges, that the earth lightly couered on them, they may easily spring vp.

And in the spring time when they begin to shoote vp and showe aboue the ground, then with an yron-formed dibble, the earth round about must be raised, that the shootes apearing, may the easilier come vp, and the rot loosed in the earth may growe the bigger, and after the growing vp, to be in such sorte weeded, that the rootes be not weakned or to much loosed in the earth.

And all the winter through, the yong plantes of the Sperage must be couered ouer with a thicke and warme couer of strawe, whereby to defend them from the sharpe frostes that might otherwise destroy them. And when the spring is come, and that they be further appeared, then to batten them with dung.

The Phisick helpes.

Sperage doth heate and moysten, and therefore helpeth the palsie, the Kings euill & the strangurie. And the fruite and seedes be vsed in medicine, and indureth four yeares in full strength.

And the Sperage eaten with meate, doth help the stoppinge of the liuer and hardnes of the milt. And the roote sodden in wine, and drinking often thereof, dooth help the shedding of the gall without doubt. And if the mouth be washed with the decoction of the Sperage, it ceaseth all the paines both of the mouth and teeth. And profitable is the Sperage to be eaten for the stomack: and ioyned with commine seedes, they put away the swellings of the stomack and passion of the Collick.

And the eating of them do amend the sight, soften gently the belly, & purge the breast, the bowelles and the raynes,

and maketh a very good sauour in all the body, but the vrine then stinketh: and being sod in wine and the same drunke, doth help the paines both of the kidneies and loynes. And the roote drunke in white wine, doth ease the paine of the stone.

And certaine others do affirme, the same profitable for women to drink with white wine, for the greefe of their priuye place. And the roote sodden in vineger, doth help the swelling and foule spots of the skin, like vnto the leaprie.

These hitherto of the properties of the Sperage.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Sauery. Chap. 11.

Sauery may be sowen in rough and leane ground, in February and December, either alone or mixt among other hearbes. And this hearbe may be set in borders, either in slippes or in rootes, and is much vsed also in meates & broths and therfore it may ill be spared out of the garden.

The Phisicke helpes.

Sauery in qualitie is hot and drye in the second degree, and this hearb eaten with creame, doth amend a colde stomacke by purging it: and if any drinketh of this hearb, it helpeth and defendeth him from falling into a sound, and taken in wine, it helpeth the stopping and other defaultes of the liuer, the milt, and the lungs, and cleanseth also womens priuie places: but women with childe must refraine both drinking and smelling vnto this hearb. And beeing sod in wine and laid on the palsie members, doth remoue the griefe and paine of them: and the hearb brused and laid plaster-wise on the belly (as the second *Plinie* writeth) doth expell or send forth the dead yongling, and prouoketh vrine: and being drunk in wine, it doth mightily quicken such as be molested with the sleeping downe right, so that their heads be often bathed with vineger: And the stomacke moued often to vomitte, either the powder taken in an egge, or the hearbe drunke in wine doth stay the same. And the hearbe drunk, doth preuaile against the stinges of all vennomous beastes.

And *Dioscorides* telleth, that the vse of the Sauery in meats,

in meats, doth long preserue the bodie in health. And *Albumacer* also writeth, that the propertie of this hearbe is, to expel and put away windines, and both the swellings and gripings of the body, and helpeth digestion. Likewise it expelleth the superfluities of the stomacke, prouoketh vrine, and the monthly tearmes, and sharpnes, besides the weakenes of the sight proceeded of euil moisture. These hitherto of the properties of Sauery.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the running Time. Cap. 12.

The running Time of the Garden, delighteth to bee set either in the slippes, or sowen in the seeds, vnder the shadowe of some hedge, or els to be set in beddes, on the edge of some pond or ditch, or pit of water, for so it prospereth & springeth the faster, and runneth out at length.

The Phisicke helpes.

The running Time is both hot and dry in the second degree, and doth so much heat, that it both prouoketh the monethly termes, and the vrine, and is also very sharpe to taste. VVhich running Time doth stay the distillings of the head proceeding of a colde stomacke, by drinking therof in wine, and also dooth draw downe the termes of women, and prouoketh vrine, & helpeth also the biting of venemous beasts: and it ceaseth the head-ache, by boyling the hearbe in Rose water, and so applying it to the head, and especially the frenzie persons, and such which be mooued to sleepe much, by the mixing of vinegar to it, and applying the same also vnto the head: and the drinking of two drams waight of the iuice in vinegar, doe stay the bloudie vomitings. And the drinking of the seeds in wine, dooth mightily prouoke the vrine, and expell the stone: and who that daily drinketh of the hearbe in wine, dooth breake the stone of the bladder and kidneis. And the hearbe healeth the sting of a Bee, if the same be laid vpon it: and being sodden in wine, with the iuice of sweet Licoras, dooth helpe both the cough, and purgeth the breast: and sodden in wine with Annis seedes, dooth heat the stomacke, putteth away the wind of the guts, and hel-

peth the strangurie. And this hearbe sodden with vinegar and honnie, and drinking thereof vnto the quantity of a cup full at a time, dooth helpe the spitting of bloud. And the iuice also mixed with vinegar, and drinking therof vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, doth the like aboue-saide: and the same sodden with wine and honie, if the same bee applied to hot, in plaister-forme, doth helpe the disease called the Squince: and sodden in wine and drunke, dooth open the stoppings of the Liuer and milt, and prouoketh vrine: And the distilled water of the running Time, drunke vnto the quantity of three vnces at a time, both morning and euening, dooth strengthen and amend the head, the braine, and the stomacke, and prouoketh the appetite vnto meat, putteth away the noise and rumbling of the belly, loosneth the hardnes of the stomacke, and prouoketh vrine: and the water in the same maner drunk, doth comfort the sight, consumeth the humors and distillations of the head, and healeth also the one daie Ague (or otherwise the Quotidian) mixed with worm wood water, and so drunke.

And the drinking of the same water, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, doth amend and helpe a colde liuer, milt, and the guts vlcerated. And the water doth open the stopping, both of the Nosethrils and eares, restoreth the hearing, helpeth the giddines of the head, stayeth from vomiting, putteth away the gripings of the belly, and bowels: also it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine by the drinking thereof: and to conclude, it healeth bruised members, by applying often linnen clothes dipped in water. These hitherto of the properties of the running Time.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of the Lumbardy Louage. Cap. 13.

This Hearbe named the Lumbardie Louage, ioyeth to be sowen in a well digged and dressed ground, but especially nére vnto a thicke hedge or wall, for that it so greatly delighteth, and best prospereth by growing in the shadowe, and nére vnto some running water: and in such sort sowen, it will come vp in any ground.

The

The Phisicke helpes.

Louage is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seeds may well be kept for three yeares. And nowe if any drinke the seedes fasting in the morning, they after purge that person, both vpward and downe-ward: and the seedes giuen in glister, doe ease that person pained with the gout in his feet. And the seeds steeped for a night in wine, and after drunke, doe send downe womens tearmes: and yet note, that these seeds bee ouer strong in working (taken inwardly) in that they breake vlcers, and open impostumes, being laid plaister wise vppon, and dooth in a forcible manner expell the dead yongling. And therefore the force of these seeds in the ministring ought to be tempered and mixed with the seeds of fenell & Annis, in a like waight of ech to the Louage, for in such sort taken inward, it neuer harmeth any person: & in applying of the seeds without the body, there needeth no other thing to be added to them: and the hearbe much profiteth in a bath, if the body be rubbed with them, for so it dooth open the powres, & draweth forth euill hmmors in bathing. And the seeds sodē either in wine or water, & drunk, do open the stopping of the liuer and milt. And the seeds mixed with comin seeds, and bruised togither, & drunke in wine, doth profite much, for that they amend the stomacke, and put away the windines of the belly. And the seeds bruised and sodden in wine, with Galingale and Sinamon, doth amend and helpe the paines and griefs both of the stomack, milt, and bowels. And the Tyzan made of the seeds, sinamon, Rapohtike, and Galingale, with sugar, and the same taken in wine, doe cease the paine of the belly, put away the swelling both of the stomacke and bowels, helpeth the biting of snakes and adders, and prouoketh vrine, and sending down of the termes. And a bath made of this hearbe and Sage, Rosemary, Mugwoort, Calamint, Camomil, Mellilote, Sticados, and Fenegreke, and these sodden in wine together, do help the crampe, proceeding of the fulnes of the body, the palsie, the pain of the gout and the kings euil: & the distilled water drunk, to the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, helpeth the gripings

of

of the sides and stomacke, the griefe of the stone, kidneis, & bladder: amendeth the horcenes of speech, and asswageth the dangerous swelling of the throte, called the Squince. And to conclude, this water maketh the face both faire and cleare, if it be daily washed (both morning and euening) there-with. These hitherto of the properties of Lumbardy Louage.

Of the ordering, and care of the greater, or Garden Mallowes. Cap. 14.

The greater, or Garden Mallowes, which beareth floures from Sommer vnto Winter, as well of the white, as red, is like in beautie vnto the Rose, although not so strong of sauour, and sweet of smell, which the women in our time vse to decke their houses and windowes with. And nowe these Mallowes, as Columella **writeth, ioyeth to bee in a fat ground, and hauing moist dung lying about it, and that it be remooued, when as foure leaues be well sprung vp. And this hearb the Romanes in ancient time vsed to eat in their Sallets and Pottage, in stead of other hearbes. And the floure also of this hearbe (as writeth** Columella) **doth both open at the ful appearance of the Sunne, and shutteth again at the setting of the Sunne. And to conclude,** *Palladius* **willeth the seeds of this hearbe to be sowen in the month of Februarie.**

The Phisicke helpes.

Garden Mallowes are moist, like to the other kindes of Mallowes, and may very well be applied, as well to the outward as inward griefes. And the hearbe, roote, or seeds, either sodden in milke or wine, and drunke, doe cease a hot & drie cough, heale the lungs blistered, and is a singuler remedie against the Tisicke. And the Garden mallowes sodden either in wine or water, and wixed with honie and Allome, and the same holden and garguled for a little season in the mouth, dooth both heale the blisterings of the mouth and throte, and other stinking sores. And the mallowes sodden and eaten, doth loose the belly: and the same also preuaileth in Agues, vnto such as be then bound in body. And of the same decoction, may bee made a glister to loose the bellie.

And

And the distilled water of the Roses or flowers of the great mallows, doth (of experience) heale the breakings out of the mouth, and preuaileth against all outward & inward heates, and healeth also the holy fire & blisters of the throt, and all other swellings, if it be gargalled in the mouth and throte, and otherwise applyed without by fine linnen clothes dipped in the same. These hitherto of the properties of the greater Garden mallowes.

Of the ordring, care and secrets of Fennel. Chap. 15.

Fennell (after the minde of later writers) ought to bee sowen in the beginning of the spring, which with vs is counted in the end of Februarie and that in sunny places and somwhat stony. But after the minde of ancient writers, it may be sowen in the month of December, January and Februarie: and at any time the same may be remoued. And now in our time, the great leaues of Fennell be strewed vnder cakes and bread set in the ouen, to giue a swéter taste & sauour vnto the crust. Also the grene leaues be stuft in sea-fish, to take away their sea sauour and smell in eating, which the daintie can scarcely abide.

The Phisick helps.

Fennel is hot and drie in the second degree: but *Aegineta* writeth, that Fennel doth heate in the third degree, and dryeth in the first. Also the seedes, heard, rinde and roote, be applyed in medicins: The seedes ought to be gathered in the beginning of September, & may be kept three yeares. Also seeth the Fennel, and when you cannot get the heard vse the seedes, which boyle in faire running or conduit water, after drinke a good glasse full of the same euery day, and it taketh away the vnnaturall heat, and causetha cleere sight. And the whole roote of the Fennel may be plucked vp in the beginning of May & kept for three yeares. Further, if any would put away the red spots of the face, which do present a kinde of leaprie, let him take the Fennel finely brused, and mix the same with olde barrowes greace, and beate them a little together, which so doone, annoint lightly the face with that

oyntment, which after doth make the face to be seemely a-gaine, and taketh the spots quite away. And the female eaten of women (doth of propertie) increase the milke in their brests. And the seedes eaten, do prouoke vrine, send down the tearmes, and helpeth the stopping and hardnes of the Liuer and milt, and the shedding of vrine. And the iuce of the Fennel mixed with warme milk & the same giuen to drink vnto yong babes or sucking children, helpeth the hardnes of fetching the breath. And both the rinde and the root of the Fennel sodden in wine, and drunk at the going to bed, and in the morning fasting, doth helpe such as be pained with the dicease of the stone, if the same sicknes proceedeth of a hot cause: and the Fennel eaten, doth comfort the stomack, & helpeth digestiō: & the like doth the pouder of the seed either eaten or drunk. And the roote sodden vntill the same be soft, and laid hot on womens paps beginning to impostumate, dooth heale them. And the iuce pressed into a porrenger, and the same set for fifteene daies in the sunne, which dropped into the eyes, doth in short time after cleare and amend the dimnes of the sight. And a little of the Aloes Hepaticke put to this iuce, and the same set in the sunne for fifteen daies, which after drop into the eyes, and it wil greatly amend the sight. And aboue all other waies with the iuce for the sight, this especially is most cōmended, that the iuce be boyled betwene two dishes on a chafing dish with coles, and that the water which standeth like a dewe on the vpper dish, be poured (still as it riseth) into a glasse: and this do so long vntill no more drops appeare in the vpper dish, & after drop of that water into the eyes, and it will greatly amend & clear the sight. And the iuce of the Fennel tempred with honye & dropped warme into the eares, doth kill the wormes increased and felt in them. And the roote with the licour sodden againe with wine, and that drunke, doth helpe the paine of the crampe, and healeth the dropsie. And the iuce of the leaues mixed with vineger, and annoynted on burning swellings, doth asswage them. These hitherto of the properties of Fennel.

Of

Of the ordring and care, of the Annis. Chap. 16.

The Annis doth desire a well digged and fat ground, and commeth very well vp in other places, by dunging and moisture, and it is sowen in February and March, either alone or with other hearbes.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Annis is hot and drye in the third degree, and hath the vertue of consuming and dissoluing: and the seedes also may be kept for four yeares in much efficacie & strength, if they be hanged vp. And washing your face in the distilled water of this hearb, it doth much cleere the same, so that this water be measurably vsed and with discretion, for too often vsing of it doth make the face yellowe. And against the black & blew of a stripe (especially if the same be about the eyes) let the seedes with the Cummine be brused togither, and wrought with wex, apply hot to the grieued place. And to the increasing of milk in the brestes and of spearme, this powder of Annis either eaten or drunk, doth greately help: and this only is caused by opening the passages of the milk & spearme. And in what manner soeuer the seedes be vsed, they asswage the swellings which both harden the bowels and greeue the stomack. And the eating of the seedes any season togither, doth both heate the liuer and helpeth digestion. And the Annis seedes sodden in wine & mixed with Sinamon and Masticke and that drunke, do mightilie help the greeuous belchings proceeded of a colde stomack. And the Annis seedes sod in water and drunk with hartestung, doth help the stopping both of the liuer and milt, and helpeth all kindes of the dropsie, and stayeth the dicease (called the whites) in women.

And the powder of Annis seedes sowed in a linnen bag, and boyled in wine, and after applied hot vnto the womans priuie place, doth both cleanse her body & bringeth downe the tearms. And the seeds taken with Castorie, do help the swelling of the stomack & bowels. And the seedes brused into powder and tempered with honye, Isope and vineger,

and boiled togither, and then the gargling of the same in the throte, doth help the disease called the squince: and the same prepared with wine, and drunk: do help the impostumes of the stomacke and the cough. And the Annis seeds either eaten or drunk with vineger & hony, do help the strangling or stopping of the matrice. These hitherto of the properties of the Annis seedes.

Of the ordring, care and secrets of Commine Chap 17.

The Commine delighteth to be sowen in a fat and well dressed ground and under a warme aire, either in March or in the middle of the spring the sedes ought to be sowen: And they do best prosper being sowen among other herbes.

Some ancient Authors write, that sedes prosper the better and growe the plentifullier if they be sowen with cursed wordes, but I commend not this manner in sowing.

The Phisicke helps

Commine is hot and drie in the third degree, as *Aegineta* writeth, and the seedes also may be kept for fiue yeares, and vsed in meates, drinkes and sauces, for that they comfort and help digestion. And the wine of the decoction of Commin seedes, drye Figs, and of Fennel seedes vsed togither, do mitigate the paine and gripings of the greate guts, comming of windines. And the same wine also like ordred, doth preuail against the cough comming of colde. And against the swelling of the cheekes, take Commine seedes and Figs wel brused togither, and after seeth them in wine, which lay plaisterwise on the greeued place, and it doth help the same. And against the colde rewme of the head, take powder of Commine seedes and Bay berries, which heate togither in an earthen potte, and putting the same after into a little linnen bagge: apply warme on the head, and this without doubt helpeth that greefe. And against the black and blewe of a stripe, or any other maner, done whiles the same is yet fresh and newe, you must take the fine powder of the Commine seedes, and wex, and woorke the same togither at the fire,

and

and often apply that plaister warme vnto the greeued place, which so vsed, is thought a sure and perfect remedy. And the Cummine seeds, sodden in wine with Fenegreke, do take away swellings, and the griping paine of the guttes. And the seeds bruised and tempered with the white of an egge, and that laid on the eie, dooth take away the rednes of the same. And the Cummine seeds boyled in wine, and laid hot on the Nauell, doth ease the strangury, and all other passions of the bladder. And the Cummin seeds sodden in water (if the face bee washed with the same) doe cause the face to bee clearer and fairer, so that the same be now and then vsed: for the often and much vsing of it, doth make the face pale. And the Cummine seeds bruised and boiled with vinegar, and applyed warme to the nosethrils, doth stay the much bleeding at the nose, and womens excesse of the Reddes. These hitherto of the properties of the Cummin seed.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Coliander. Cap. 18.

COliander ioyeth to be sowen in a fat ground, although it will well enough prosper in a leane ground: and the seeds, the elder they shall be (so that they bee not vtterly decaied with age) the sooner and better they will prosper and come vppe, and they must be often watered. And Palladius writeth, that the seedes may bee sowen from the middle of March to October.

The Phisicke helpes.

The hearbe Coliander is sufficient common, and hath the vertue of cooling, as writeth *Dioscorides*, although other write (as *Vigonius*) that the Coliander is colde and dry, and others to be hot and drie. For by the effect it is known to be hot, in that it doth reserue windines, and wens: and on the other side againe, the seeds shew it to be colde and dry, in that (after meat) eaten, they stay the vapours rising vp, that they ascend not vnto the head. And the seeds in receits may well be vsed and kept for two yeares. And the seeds haue the vertue of helping digestion, and the paines of the stomake with windines, if they be ministred in meat. And the wine of the

decoction of Coliander drunke, doth the like: also the pouder of the seeds cast on meats, do cause them digest the better.

And *Isiodorus* writeth, that the pouder of the seedes ministred in sweet wine, do cause men to be the proner to the veneriall act, yet the same too much vsed, is euill: for that it bringeth men vnto a frenzines, and raging with themselues: and the much eating of the hearbe and seeds together, is venemous to dogs, and killeth them: and further, the confects made of the Coliander seeds with sugar, do not only strengthen the stomacke by vsing them, but represse the vapours, ascending to the head, and therefore the rather to be vsed in meats of those which be molested with the falling sickneſſe. For the cause of this sicknes, dooth proceede of the vapours which rise from the stomacke vnto the head. And the seedes may not be eaten raw, but rather steeped in vinegar, or couered ouer with sugar: for that being either steeped in vinegar, or couered with sugar, before the eating, dooth stay the humors rising from the stomake vnto the head. And the Coliander seeds prepared with vinegar, and bruſed, and after taken with the iuice of Plantine, staieth the great bleeding of the nose. And *Xenocrates* writeth a marueilous matter (if the same be true) that if a woman eat but one grain of the seeds, that then her courses shall runne for one day: if two graines, then two daies together, if three grains, then three daies together: and thus, looke how many graines, and so many dais following they shall continue. But this hearb is forbidden to be taken inward, for that it harmeth the head & bloud. And the iuice of Coliander mixed with vinegar, doth both coole and helpe the holy fire. And the seeds a little bruſed and giuen in raisons to eat, doth slea the wormes in children. And the iuice of the hearbe, with the iuice of Lettuce, of Plantine, the White of an Egge, and Oyle of Roſes, all these labored well together, and after laid on hot impoſtumes, and burning swellings, or blisters, doe both asswage and heale them.

These hitherto of the Coliander.

Of

Of the ordering, and care of the Mustard seedes. Cap. 19

Mvstard Seedes ioy to be sowen in a tilled and well laboured ground, and rather on the ridge of furrows, although they will spring in any ground, and bee nourished in fine earth like to pouder dust. And the seeds must be raked ouer, whereby they may bee couered in the ground, for that they ioy in the natural moisture continuing in the earth: and the seedes which you prepare to bee eaten (in transposing the plants) they will be stronger. Also the seeds sowen before and after winter, doe desire a fat ground, and to bee thin sowen. for so they come vp better then being thicke sowen: and after the plants be wel sprung vp, they may be remoued and set againe.

The Phisicke helpes.

Mustard seeds be hot and dry in the fourth degree, & the seeds onely to be kept for fiue yeares: and the seeds haue the vertue of dissoluing, attracting, & extenuating. And against the palsie of the tongue, the seeds onely chewed and holden vnder the tongue, do helpe the same. And against the palsie in other members, let the seeds bee put into a litle bag, and soden in wine, laid on the grieued place, but especially in the beginning of the siknes. And the pouder of the seeds drawn vp by the nose, doth prouoke sneezing, & purgeth the brain of superfluities. And also *Plinie* writeth, that the seeds doe extenuate and diminishe the clammy and grosse humours, and do heale the stings of Serpents and Scorpions, being ministred with vinegar. And the seeds do marueilously purge, breake the stone, cause an appetite, and comfort the stomak. And the seeds brused with Enula Campana, and that laid on ripe impostumes, do both breake and draw them without paine. And the seeds garguled with water and honny, dooth helpe the blistering of the mouth and the Squince. And the seeds eaten with figs and Cummine mixed together, dooth helpe the dropsie. And a like quantity of Mustard seedes, Pellitorie, and Ginger, mixed together with rosed honnie, and also washing the mouth there-with, and holding the same a good while in the mouth, dooth purge the braine of

of such euill humours, which especially causeth greeuous aking and paine of the head: and the selfe same doth helpe the falling of the roofe of the mouth, & the vlcers in the throat. And to haue a cleare voice to sing, take the meale of mustard seedes, and worke the same with hony into little balls, of the which, swallow one downe euery morning, and it shall cause you to haue a cleare voyce in short time. And the chawing the Mustard seeds in the mouth, dooth drawe downe and purge the flegme of the head. These hitherto of the mustard seeds.

Of the ordering and care, both of the Cheruil, and Caper. Cap. 20.

Cheruill desireth to bee sowen in a fertile, moistie, and well dunged ground. And to be sowen in the moneth of August, for so it serueth very well all the winter thorowe. And the Capers loue in a barren and leane ground, they flourish, and beare their floure in the Sommer, and annoy al other hearbs growing nére them. And they also wither and dry away, at the setting and going out of sight of the seauen starres.

Of the ordering, and care, of the hearbe Dill. Cap. 21.

The hearbe Dill, desireth the common earth of the garden, and to be sowen in the month of February or March and in the moneths also of September or October. And in a gentle and wholsome place, it may be sowen in the month of December, either by it selfe, or among other hearbes, & well beareth or suffereth all conditions of weather: but it most loueth in the warme weather, and to be thin sowen and watered, if they be not otherwise dewed & moistned with shours And some couer not the seedes with earth after the sowing, supposing, that the birds will not eate vp the seedes, lying so bare.

The Phisicke helpes.

Dill is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seedes may be kept for three yeares, although they be the better, if yearly they be renued. And the seeds also be chiefly occupied,

ed in the medicine. And now the decoction of the hearb & seeds do preuaile and help the straightnes of pissing, and increaseth milk in the brests. And against the paine of the matrice, take a handfull of Dill, boyling the same in wine, and after applying it in plaister forme vnto the grieued place, it doth help the same. But *Auicen* writeth, that the much & often eating of Dill, doth weaken & make dim the sight: and yet if any vseth the hearb, it procureth sleep, and the rather if the head be annointed with the oyle of Dil. And the ancient Phisitians write, but especially *Galen*, that garlands made of the greene hearb and worne on the head, procure sleepe: and the iuce or oyle of Dill dropped warme into the eares, doth help the paine of them. And the Dill sodden with Poppye seedes, and drunke, doth stay vomiting and the gripings and wind of the belly. And the ashes of Dill doth helpe all the diseases of the fundament, and paine of the priuities, and it may profitably be annointed on moiste vlcers, and especially those (as *Galen* writeth) which are often in the priuities. And the decoction of the Dill in wine, being drunk, dooth help such as are pained with the strangury. And the Dil sodden with sugar & mixed with oyl and wine, and after drunk, doth helpe the matrice, send down the after burden, and draw downe the termes, taking to the quantity of two drammes at a time. And take the seedes of Dill & Nettle, a like quantitie, those beate into fine pouder, which mix with water and hony, and after lay that plaister-wise on the pyles of the fundament, & it will heale them in short time. These hitherto of the hearb Dill.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Rue. Chap. 22.

Rue, or herbgrace, desireth to be sowen in a sunny place and drye, in the month of March, and that the earth be mixt with ashes. And this herb loueth to be sowen on high beds, wherby the proper moysture may shed therfro, as Palladius writeth. And the bare seeds also without huskes, may be strewed on beds, and couered ouer with fine drye earthe with a rake. And the yong plantes sprung out of the seedes,

being in the huskes be the stronger, although they be longer in the appearing aboue the earth. And the yong plants haue both moysture and dung, and rather ioyeth in the dung of ashes, and it cannot well abide the colde of winter, and therfor desireth to be couered on the beds with ashes, whereby the same may the better defend them from the sharpnes of the colde through the heate therof. And if they be sprinckled with water, then do they faster spring vp, as writeth Theophrastus: yet may not the plantes be moued with any yron, for feare of hindring their growth. And when the yong plantes be somwhat come vp, then wæde them diligently, whereby the wædes hinder not their growth. You must not only sow the sædes, but set the slippes being slipped off from the greater stalkes neare to the rotes in the spring time, and in the month of August and that the slipps be writhed at the ends, for so they spædilye take rote in the earth. And the whole plant remoued and set againe, doth seldome prosper, but dyeth some after the newe setting, which the slippes broken off from the stalkes contrary do. And they prosper many yéres without withering any thing. so that a woman (hauing then her tearmes) come not nigh nor handle the hearb, for that by handling, the hearb doth by little and little wither and drye away, as writeth Collumella.

And some write, that Rue set within the Beane, boared through, and couered with earth, doth in the growing, take away the strong smell of the hearbe.

And both Plinie and Palladius write, that the Rue more ioyeth and plentifullier groweth, by being set vnder the shadowe of the fig trée. And of this Theophrastus iudgeth that to be the best hearb grace, which being planted through the fig trée barke, is so couered with earth.

And the wæding also of this hearb with bare hands whilest the deawe hangeth on the leaues, doth cause dangerous blisters and sores.

And therefore if any by ignorance doth wæde about the plantes without gloues on their handes, and that the hands be after infected both with an Itch and swelling or blisters, then

then let the person annoint his hands with sallet oyle, or for lacke of oyle, with the iuce of Hemlocke, and it will heale them in short time.

And the iuce of the hearbgrace sprinkled on Hens, Cocks chickens or any other poultrie sitting on the roste, or sprinkled in the poultrie house, doth driue away Measelles by the stronge smell of the hearb, for it is a speciall defence against such kinde of vermine. And to driue away either gnats or flyes out of your chamber, take a greene branch of the hearb grace (as Democritus writeth) and with the same sprinckle water round aboute your chamber. And thus much for the ordring the hearbgrace.

The Phisicke helps

Hearbgrace is hot and drye in the third degree, and both the leaues and seedes may well be vsed in medicine. And the seedes also ought to be gathered in harueſt, which may well be kept for fiue yeares, and the leaues dryed, for all poysons, and a peculiar Triacle for the poor, which not only the King *Methridates* witnesseth, but very experiēce doth daily teach the same: yea, both curious painters and fine grauers do often eate of this hearb with their meate, for the cleerring and amending of the sight. And Rue eaten, doth put away winde and dulleth the desire to the veneriall acte. And the leaues eaten with drye figs and walnuts togither, is the sureſt remedie that may be against any deadly poyson, if the same be taken in time.

And to make an other preseruatiue of the same, somwhat more costly, is on this wise. Take an ounce of the leaues of Rue, halfe an ounce of figs, halfe an ounce of Iuniper berries, two ounces of walnuts, and four ounces of vineger: all these mix and labour togither, of the which, swallowe downe a little fasting in the morning when you rise, and you shall be defended all that day from beeing poysoned. And it is also a singular & precious Triacle against a pestilent ayre. And the herbgrace sodden in vineger and drunk, putteth away belching. And the hearb sodden in wine with figs, vntill the halfe be consumed, and after drunke, dooth mightily help

the dropsie, the paines also of the brests, sides and loynes: yea, the same drunk, doth help the cough, the diseases of the liuer, the lunges and the kidneis, so that there hang no ague on the pacient. And the hearb sodden with oyle, and after cast vp in glister forme, doth put away the paines of the womans places, and the swellinges of the great gutte. And the hearb brused with oyle, and laid plaister-wise on all the priuye place vnto the fundament, dooth help the strangling of the priuitie. And the hearb sodden with Isop and Annis in wine, doth put away gripings either drunk or fomented on the grieued place. And a plaister made of the hearb with oyl and laide on the nauell, dooth kill the wormes of the belly. And the eating of the hearbgrace doth amend and put away the smel of Onyons & Garlike. And the hearbgrace helpeth those diseased with the ague, if the same be sodden in oile oliue, & before the fit come, the body be annointed with the same, or els the same put (before the fit) in glister wise. And the hearb sodden in oile & dropped hot into the eares, doth expell the wormes. And the hearb sodden with mirre, and drunk, doth put away the water betweene the skin and the flesh. And the iuce of Rue mixed with the oyle of roses and vineger, and annointing the head therwith, dooth put away the beating paine therof. And the hearb sodden in Fumitory water, and drunk, doth help children diseased with small pockes. If children hauing the measels, be not already blinded with them, then hang both the roote of Rue and Scabious about the childrens neckes, and they shall be defended therby by Gods permission. And an oyntment made of the hearb with oyle of Roses, Ceruse and vinegar, doth heale any scabbe, the holy fire, running sores and hot blisters. And the hearb with Garlike, salte, and walnuts mixed together, and layed plaister-wise on the bite of a mad Dogge or Adder, it doth heale the same: And against the weakenes of sight, proceeded of a chollorick fumositye, drink then of the wine wherin this hearb hath bene laid to soake in the vessell, for a while before: Also the hearb mixed with Rose-water & laid on bleared eyes, do merualously cleanse & heal them.

And

And against the tooth-ach, take the hearbe sodden in wine, and lay that plaister-wise on the grieued place. Or this wise take the stalke of the same hearbe, and burne the same somwhat in the fire, and with that burne the hollownesse within the tooth. And against the coldnes of the stomacke, and palsie of the other members, drink the decoction of this herb with Castorie. And against the stopping of the liuer & mi't, the straightnes of making water, drinke the hearbe with the root of Fenel sodden in wine together, or the pouder of the root of the Fenell, with the iuice of the hearbe. And against and straightnes of making of water, and bloudie flixe, seeth the hearbe in wine and oyle, and lay it plaister-wise on the root of the priuity. And young maried wiues may seldome eat of this hearb, for feare of hindring conception at any time And the person annointed with the iuice of this hearbe, or bearing the hearbe about him, shall not be bitten or stinged of any venemous worme or beast. And last, the Rue of propertie doth driue away al venemous beasts and wormes out of that ground which is set about with that hearbe: and this beeing planted in Gardens neere to the beddes of Sage, the Toade will not come neere the same, vnder which (as some write) they delight to be. These hitherto of the properties of the Hearbe Grace.

Of the ordering, and care of the hearbe Isope.

Cap. 23.

Isope is a fruitfull Plant, and necessarie in the Garden, which ought to be sowen or set in slippes or whole Plants, neither in a fat nor dunged ground, but in an open and sunnie place: and after the hearbe is well sprung vppe, then may it endure the frosts and snow in the Winter. And Palladius willeth the Isope to be set in whole Plants in the moneth of Februarie. And in the Sommer, when the hearbe beareth his floure, then cut of the same, and drie it in the shadow.

The Phisick helpes.

The Isope of qualitie is hot and dry in the second degree, yet *Galen* affirmeth, that Isope is hot and dry in the third de-

gree, but the same is of the thin parts. And when the same is to be vsed in medicine, then ought the leaues to be stripped from the stalkes, and the stalks cast away as vnprofitable, but the leaues may well be kept for a yeare.

And now the Isope sodden in spring water, with figs, hony, and Rue, and after drunke, dooth helpe those diseased in the Lungs, fetching their breath short, an olde cough proceeding through the distillings from the head vnto the lower parts, and in the fetching of breath (none otherwise) then by reaching the necke vpright, and slaieth all manner of woormes in the bellie. And the iuice of the hearbe drunke with Oximell, doth loose a costiue belly: and the same iuice taken with the seeds of Cresses, doth gently loose the belly, and causeth a cleare face, and good colour of the skin, if any drinketh thereof.

And the hearbe boyled with pure duckes grease, and figs, and that laid in plaister forme on the milt, dooth take away the swelling thereof.

And against the hardnes or swelling of the milt, and the water betweene the skinne, boyle the hearbe with figs and Salt Niter, and laye that plaister-wise on the grieued places. And the hearbe sodden in wine, and drunk, doth cleanse the breast: and sodden in water, dooth swage the swelling of the gummes, by washing the mouth therewith. And the hearbe sodden in wine with fenell seeds, that wine drunk, doth take away both the paine of the stomacke, and bowels: and a foment also made with the hearbe sodden and applied vnto the stomacke, doth the like effect: and the same foment applied beneath, dooth purge and cleanse womens places of the superfluous humours. And for the disease of the Squince, the hearbe soden with figs, and that garguled in the throat, doth greatly helpe: and the hearbe sodden in vinegar, with the which, washe the gummes of the teeth, and it will cease the ach and paine of them. And of the Isope made a wine, named Isope wine, dooth helpe by drinking thereof, the diseases of the breast, the sides, and the lungs, the shortnes of wind, and an old cough: also the same prouoketh vrine, and helpeth the

gripings

gripings and nippings of the body, and ceaseth the colde shaking of a daily Ague, and draweth downe the termes. These hitherto of the properties of Isope.

Of the ordering and care of the Mints. Cap. 24.

MInts may bee planted nére vnto a well, or other running water, for that the hearbe delighteth in a moist place, and to be set either in slips, or in the whole rotes, and flourisheth in the Sommer, but withereth in the Winter. And this hearbe ought to bee set in a sunnie place, but in no verie fat ground, nor dunged: and this hearbe may not bee moued after the growing with any Iron, as wee haue afore taught. And this hearbe once sowen and prouing, doth continue many yéars after in the garden. And Pliny writeth, that the Mints ought to bee set in the beginning of the moneth of March.

The Phisicke helpes.

Mints in the garden, are hot and dry in the second degree, and all the sorts of mints in the garden, do both comfort the stomacke, and helpe digestion. And now the mints brought to pouder, and eaten in milke, dooth slea the wormes of the belly: and the hearbe eaten, doth loose the belly: and the daily vsing of this hearbe, doth giue a good colour: and at any time eaten, is very healthful to the body. And the iuce of the hearbe mixed with a litle Brimstone and vinegar, and that annointed on the holy fire with a feather, doth cease the pain forthwith. And mints soden with wine and drunk, doth ease the paine of the kidneis, and bowels: and soden in wine and oile, and that laid plaister-wise on impostumes, doth dissolue and cure them. And against the stinking sauour of the mouth and rottennes of the gums and teeth, let then the mouth and gums bee washed with vinegar of the decoction of garden mints, & after rubbed with the pouder of dry mints, or with dry mints. And against the brest hardened by the curding of the milk, take a great handful of the mints, & the same seeth in wine and oil, and after lay that plaister-wise on the paps & it helpeth them. And further note, that when any medicine is giuen against poyson, the same ought to be ministred with the

the iuice of Mints, or with wine of the decoction of it, if you cannot get (at that time) the iuice, or the onelye iuice of Mints, or wine of the decoction of it, or the iuice of it with honie commixed together, doth helpe the same. Also the same helpeth the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, and the waies of the vrine proceeding of a colde humour, and of the hot without an Ague. And the iuice ministred with honny, doth slea the wormes in the belly, and it doth also kil worms dropped into the eares. And the mints put into milke, will not suffer the milke to curd, although the runnet bee put into it: and in the like sort, it doth hinder generation. These hitherto of the properties of the garden mints.

Of the ordering and care of the Garden Time.
Cap. 25.

The Garden Time is a plant right profitable, which delighteth rather to be set in the whole plants, then sowen in the seeds, in a leane and stony ground, and that open in the Sun, but neither in fat nor dunged ground. And Theophrastus **writeth, that it will well enough prosper, if the plantes bee set with the floures growing on them. And** Palladius **writeth, that the best time for the setting of it, is in the later end of the moneth of September, in a sunnie place, and stony ground.**

The Phisicke helpes.

The Garden Time is hoat and drie in the third degree, and doth prouoke vrine, and the termes in women, and purgeth also the bowels, by drinking therof in wine. This Time sodden with honie and drunke, doth helpe such as fetch the wind short, and helpeth in a manner all other griefes of the breast, by spitting forth the corrupt matter. And four drams of the fine pouder of Time, taken with six spoonfull of Oximell, doth purge choller, and cleanse the bladder.

And if the belly swelleth, then take one dram of the fine pouder of this Garden Time, with a spoonfull of mellicrate, which drunke fasting, doe ease the paine of the bowels and loynes. And to take away the wind of the breast, the sides,

and

and flanckes, drink the quantity of three drams of the pouder with a spoonefull of Oximel mixed togither. Also three drams of this pouder mixed with a spoonful of Oximel doth purge the melancholly, and dulnes of the sences proceeding of melancholly: and the same potion also giueth the clearnes of sight, and helpeth the paines of the eyes, if it be taken fasting. Also the pouder helpeth such, grieuously pained with the gout, being giuen with wine. And this Time must be moderately vsed, for the much eating of it doth greatly heat. And yet beware of the black Time, for that the same doth corrupt and engender choller: but vse that only which beareth a purple flower, hauing some whitenes withall. Thus much of the garden Time

Of the ordring and care, of the hearb Organie. Chap. 26.

Organie delighteth to be set in rough and stony places, and to be dunged and watred till the same be well fastned in the earth. And it also delighteth in the same order of dressing as doth the Parcely.

And Palladius **willeth that Organie be set in September about the time of the Suns entring into** Libra. **And it ought then to be gathered when it beareth floures, and to be dryed in the shadowe, for so the leaues and floures will continue for a yeare, if they be before stripped from the stalkes and the stalkes cast away.**

The Phisicke helpes.

Organie of the garden is hot and drie in the third degre, and the kindes of Organie haue the vertue of cutting a sunder, drying, drawing and also consuming: but the roote of any of them haue no vertue in medicine. This Organie helpeth any person that is diseased in the Liuer, by drinking the decoction of the flouers. And the flouers and leaues put into a little linnen bag, and the same boyled in wine, and aplyed hot to the head (the pacient then couered with clothes to sweate) doth driue forth and put away many griefes of the head and brest, and helpeth also the straightnes of fetching breath. And the Organie sod in wine, and drunk, doth help the stomacke, and ease the bowels. And the same decoction

laid on the belly, dooth prouoke vrine, and being drunke warme, doth ease the grieuous paine in making of water, & the dropping of the vrine. And to help the disease of going often to the stoole and doing nothing, take the pouder of Organy, and strewe or sprinkle that on the fundament, & it will shortly after loose the belly & bring forth the ordure. And the hearb it selfe sodden in wine olyue, and the same striked on a linnen cloth, & applied after to the womans priuie place, doth take away the hardnes therof, and purgeth it, and draweth downe the tearmes. And to heale a red leapry take the iuce of Organye, the iuce of Horhound, a little wine and the like of the oyle of Henbane, yet more of them then of the iuce, putting to them also a little oyle of Tartar, which so done, mix altogither, anointing the partie in an hothouse before his comming forth: & if that after his comming forth he be grieued with paine, let him take Goates grease melted in a frying pan, with the which annointe the places againe, and after lye downe in a cleane paire of sheetes, lying there so long vntill the same be dryed in, and after take and bruse the Organye, mixing the same with wheaten bran, and heat that in a frying pan, and this being so hot as may be suffered, lay vpon the blisters and leaprie, and binding a cloth vpon it, let it so lye vntill the same need heating againe, and this doe so often, vntill the patient be healed, which the same will do without dout. And in the meane while let the pacient eate such thinges as do ingender good blood, and be of an easie digestion, and dayly to drinke the sirop of Fumitory: and if the same happen in the winter, then to drinke the sirop of Egrimony in such sort.

And further, the iuce of Organnye with womans milke dropped warme into the eares, doth ease the paine of them. And the hearb bruſed with Roses, Calamus, Aromaticus and wormwood, and this applied hot, doth send vp againe the fundament into the proper place. These hitherto of the properties of the Organny.

Of the

Of the ordring, care, and secrets of Violets. Chap. 27.

Violets (after the minde of Columella) ought to be planted in beds a foote high, and the earth well laboured and turned in with dung, and that the plants be not above a yeare olde, and to be set in thyrt furrowes a foote broad, in the beginning of the spring, or in the entrance of the monthe of March. And the seeds may be sowen in beds twice a yeare first in the spring time and after in the harueſt, but the later sowing prospereth the worse with vs, through the colde season following, which Violets ought in the like sort to be weeded and the olde withered leaues cut away & watred (when need so requireth) as you do other potherbs in the comming vp. And to haue one plant of Violets bring forth sundry coulours togither, take the leaues of all the colours of Violets, and put them togither into a thin worne linnen cloth, and after set them in a well dunged and laboured ground, as before was taught. And this note, which by experience hath bene found true, that vnles the faireſt Violet be remoued, it will beare both a smaller flower, and a lesser of smell, then it did in the yeare before.

The Phisick helps.

Violets be colde in the end of the second degree. The Violets ought especially to be gathered in March, and dryed in a shadowey place of the aire. And there be also three kindes of them which are vsed in medicine, as the white, the black, and the yellowe. And the floures drunk, do take away the windines of the stomack: and the decoction of the floures gargalled in the throate, dooth help the diceaſe called the squince.

And the iuce of this hearbe dooth put away any swelling proceeding of a hot cause. And two drams of the powder of the seedes drunken in wine, dooth drawe downe the tearmes of women. And the roote sodden in wine, and laide vpon the swollen Milte, dooth put away the swelling, and dryeth vp the humour.

And the roote sod in wine and laid plaister-wise on the

hot gout, doth ease the paine. And white Violets boyled, and laide in plaister forme vnto the belly of a woman, doth send forth the dead yongling and put away the swellings of the priuie place. And if a foment of them be applyed to the nether parte vpward, it doth mundifie the priuie place, and drawe downe the tearmes. And the Violets applyed, doth ease the paine of the head (proceeding of an vntemperate hotnes) causeth sleep, soften & make easie the brest & throt, help the pallat of the mouth fallen, and the squince, but the sirope of the Violets do especially worke these aboue said: and the only smell of the floures, take away the head-ache. And the roots boyled with vineger and drunk, and the same annoynted on the splene, doth asswage the swelling, and easeth likewise the gout. And the hearb with the root boyled & applyed to children, doth help their cough. And the oyle of violets doth heal many diseases: as first, dropped into the eares, doth put away the griefs of them, and taketh away the head-ache by annoynting the head therwith. And the same oyle mixed with worme-seedes, and annointing the belly therwith, doth expell and send forth the wormes. And the sirop of the Violets doth help the burning of the ague, loose the belly, and quallifieth a hot Liuer. And the purple Violets drunk in water, do loose the belly, quallifie choller, help inflamations, ceasse thirst, & put away the iaundise: and the same doth the conserue of Violets. These hitherto of the Violet.

Of the ordring, care and secrets of all Roses. Chap 28.

For that Roses be pleasant ornaments in a garden, and so necessary (all the kindes) in medicine, we minde heere largely to write of the sowing and setting of all the kindes.

For all kindes of Roses may not be set either in fat and clayie ground, nor moist or wet earth, but in a fine earth dunged with store of drye rubbish, and in short slips of a foote long, and in very short furrowes. For to be sowen in the seedes, they come slowly vp.

And here note, that you may not think those to be the seedes

sædes of the Rose, which grow in the middle of the floure, in colour like vnto golde: but that the sæds be in that part which resembleth the forme of a small Peare in the vpper ende of the stalke on which the leaues of the floure sticke. And now the sædes are then ripe to bee gathered, when as the grapes with vs bee full ripe: which ripenes of them is well knowen, both by their fuskish and brownish colour, and by their softnes in the fæling. And note further, that the beds of Roses, must be high cast vp, which you ought especially to doe in the moneth of March, hauing your ground then in a readines, and the day faire. And ordering your beds after this manner yearely, they will continue many yeares: and when they war olde, then dig vp the earth about them, and prune them by cutting from them all the withered stalks and dead branches, and repairing the empty places with new slippes, after the mind of Palladius. And some will, that the olde plants with the rots beeing digged vp, and cut a span long, and bee newe set againe. And other will, that the yong springs with their rots be set againe a fot a sunder, and to be dunged and often watered. And if you haue not sufficient plants to set out your beds, then betwæn the old plants set yong springs, slipped off from the old, and the olde set againe with the rots and all, and that a fot a sunder ech from the other, wel dunged, and often watered, for so they grow the plentifuller and faster. And at the end of euery yeare, newe set them againe, and prune and cut away the superfluous branches at the setting of each rote, and dig also fresh earth often about them, for in that they ioy. And the Roses will smell the swæter, if they be gathered in faire and drie daies: and to haue your roses sooner than any other, and pleasanter of smell, make little gutters, two hand breadth from the rots, and poure warme water morninge euening into the gutters, which so through the heat dooth greatly comfort the plants, and maketh them grow the faster.

Also Didimus writeth, that if you set garlike heads hære and there among your roses, they will smell farre pleasanter therow the continuall heat sent from them. And here note,

that the maner of the watering aboue-said, ought not to bee done before the cups or very young buds appeare, and then (daily after) to water vnto the gathering.

And to haue roses euery moneth, you must then (as Didimus writeth) new plant, dung and water them often euery moneth. But to haue roses monethly cannot be possible, neither in our country of England, nor in any other country, lying vnder the North, so wel as in the temperate & warme countries. And this note, that those Roses which grow in a drie ground, bee farre swæter than those growing in a wet ground.

And to haue timely Roses, sift then your earth through a siue, and that earth mixe with dung, and put the same into an earthen pot, which after moisten a litle, setting the same abroad in sunnye and warme daies, or letting small and fine raine fal vpon it, and at the setting of the sun, take in the pot alwaies: and this so long do (and watering it the whiles) vntill the winter and cold weather be past. And after this, when a fair day commeth, then set the pot into the earth, couering it ouer and about the plants with fresh earth, and doe afterward, as aboue is taught, and you shall so haue timelie Roses.

And to kæpe Roses al the yære, do as Didimus teacheth: take græne barley, being yet as grasse, (and not eared) with the rots, and all those put into an earthen pot, not glased, or rather vnmealed: into which put your buds nothing opened, and diligently couer them about with this græne barly, and you shall kæpe them fresh and græne so long as you list (couering the mouth of the pot close) euen as though they grew still in beds on their stalkes. And others straw the græn barley on pauement or hard floze, and in the blades they burie or hide the buds. Also other take yong buds, a litle opened at the setting of the sunne, and in no wise touching them with hands, but properly gather them with a sharpe knife, & those lay on a drie bord, letting them be abroad al the night through if the night be faire: after, haue in a readines your earthen pot, well glazed both within and without, but some thinke it

it better, if not nealed at all, but whether way you like best, (that vse) and put therein your Roses before the sun be vp in the morning, and stoppe close your pot with clay, mixed with horse dung, and flocks, that no aire breath out at the mouth of the pot: which so done, then set the pot into a bedde of drye sand, and couering it wel ouer with the same dry sand, letting no moist place be nær to, or about the same. And on this wise, and by that other meanes afore taught, you may haue fresh roses all the yeare through.

And here note, that roses and other flowers, dried either in the sun or Duen, do longer and better retaine their strength, sauor, and colour, then being dried in the shadow, so that the same be done with discretion. And the like may be thought to be done with the swæt and smelling roses.

And as touching that way of making the white roses to be red, and the red Roses to be white, and so party colors, with other prety conclusions besides of the rose, you shall further read and vnderstand in my litle treatise, intituled: Naturall & Artificiall conclusions, where I largely write of these, and many other right pleasant conclusions to be read and vnderstanded of the common sort.

The Phisick helpes.

The Rose is colde and drie in the second degree. Now, when the red Roses be not fully opened, they must be clipped off, and dried in the Sunne. The rosed hony eaten, doth profite much, for that the same doth both comfort the bloud and stomacke. And the iuice of the roses soden in wine, doth take away the paine of the head, and helpeth the eies: and the gummes washed with the same, doth put away the paine of them. And the leaues of the roses bruised, and laid on inflamations, doth draw forth the heat. The seeds of roses beaten to pouder, dooth ease the paine of the teeth, by rubbing the gums and teeth with the same pouder. And the heads (in which the seeds be) sodden and drunke, doe loose the belly, and help the spitting of bloud. Roses mixed with hony & sugar, & that eaten, do dry vp euil humors of the stomack: & the

leaues

leaues of the Roſes ſoden in wine, and giuen to drinke, doth helpe ſuche griefes as commonly happen in womens priuie places. And the freſh or newe Roſe leaues, mixed togeather with honie, doe aptly purge mans body. And to make an eſpeciall Laxatiue, take two ounces of the iuice of Roſes, and mixe the ſame with VVhay made of cowes milke, and a litle Spicknard: and you may alſo take the whay of milke, putting thereto twelue ounces of roſe leaues, and a litle honnie, and this doth marueilous well looſe and purge the belly. And firope of roſes onely (being made of freſh Roſes) doth purge the belly: and Roſe leaues wrought together with hony and ſugar, doe both comfort and purge the body. And that vinegar is right profitable, in which the roſes be infuſed or ſteped for a night, to annoint or ſtrike on hot members, or places of the bodie: and to a hot ſtomacke the ſame applied outward, doth greatly helpe and qualifie the hot burning therein. And the iuice of Roſes, drunke with ſweete conduit water, dooth both looſe the bodie, purgeth the bloud, and eſpecially choller, and putteth away the Kings euill. And the iuice of roſes onely taken, doth put away a great burning without danger, and bringeth a man (after the purging of his bodye) vnto a quiet reſt. And the Roſes do comfort the heart, and reioice the bloud. And the roſed honie doth both comfort and expell the malanchollie and flegmatike matter: and giuen in that water, in which Feneli ſeeds is ſodden, dooth purge the better, if the ſame ſhalbe mixed with a litle ſalt.

The beſt making of the oile of Roſes is on this wiſe, firſt clip off the roſe leaues from the whites, and boiling the ſame in oyle Oliue, then ſun the ſame in a glaſſe for fiftie daies: and this is the beſt approued oile. And this oile applied to a hot liuer, doth greatly helpe: and annointed about the Temples, doth take away the aking or beating paines of the head, and cooleth it. The Roſe leaues vſed in meats, doth aſwage both the heate of the ſtomacke and liuer. And the pouder of roſe leaues bruiſed with vinegar, and mixed with the white of an Egge, doth effectually heale the paine of the eies, reſtraineth the humours, and the ſheading of bloud into the vaines of

the

the eyes, if the same be applied plaister-wise on the temples. And that which is called suger roset, hath the vertue of comforting and staying, and helpeth the bloudy flixe, the cholle-rick vomiting, the faintnes of body, & the Cardiake passion. And the dew falne on Rose leaues, and gathered into a clean quil, which drop on the nether eye lid, and it will amend the bleardnes of the eys. And the drye Rose leaues boyled in wine and drunk, doth amend the paines of the head, the eyes the eares and the gummes: and the same cast in glister forme, doth help the corruptions both of the bowels and womens priuy places And the red Rose water drunk in *Balneo Maria*, hath many goodly effectes: for the same water drunk, doth strengthen & coole the braine, the hart, the stomack, and all the inward members, strengthneth also the spirits & natural heate, and preserueth from rottennes. Take one ounce of this red Rosewater, a little quantity of white wine, one dram of Tutia, to which ad of Aloes Hepatike and of suger candie of eche twentye graines, these mixe all togither, which after drop (as need requireth) into the eares, it doth cleanse, drye and strengthen the sight and the eyes: and the same water dropped with a little suger into the eyes, doth help the exulceration & rednes of the eyes, proceding of heate: which being drunk fasting, vnto the quantitye of three ounces, doth take away the giddines of the head, and strengthen the liuer. *These* hitherto of the properties of Roses.

Of the ordring, care and secrets of the hearbe Basil. Chap. 29.

BBasil for his excellent smell and sauor hath bene greatly counted vpon in ancient time, insomuch that Kings and Princes (for the greate delight which they conceiued in this hearb) did plant the same in their gardens. And the time of sowing this hearb, after the mind of Columella, **ought to be done in the beginning of the month of May, in fat earth, and when the sedes be sowen and couered with earth, then to be pressed downe with a roller, and diligently trod downe with the fete: For if the Gardner shall leaue the sedes vn-**

trodendowne, that they do lye hollow in the earth, they will putrifie and come to no prose. Theophrastus writeth a marueilous matter of the Basil, that if the sædes be sowen with curssed woordes (like as some do in the Hempsæd) that then they will come vp the better & the soner: but I rather wish to tarry the longer for them. The soner the sæds will break and come vp if after the sowing they be daily sprinkled with warme water. And some wish the sæds to be sprinkled with vineger if they be sowen towards the winter, for that with such sprinkling they soner spring vp. And Pliny willeth the Basil to be watred only at none time of the day, whereas all other hearbes are to be watred morning and euening with colde water. And when the Basil is come vp an handfull high, then to be cut off so right and straight as is possible, although it be forbidden in the like sorte to touch it with yron, as the hearb-grace, Pintes & Sauery. And Gargilius Martialis writeth a marueilous matter and worthy to be noted, that the Basil sometimes bringeth forth purple floures, sometimes white, and sometimes red of colour like to the Rose.

And Crisippus (as writeth Pliny) affirmeth the hearb to be vnprofitable vnto the stomacke, the vrine, the clearnes of the eyes: besides, to cause frensines, the forgetfull sicknes, and stoppinges or corruptions of the Liuer, and for this he thought it best to be eschewed both of men and goates. And the Greek writers think the Basil so disagreing and contrary to women, that if the whole Basil with the rot, be put secretly vnder the dish of meate set on the table (the woman not knowing therof) that she shall not after taste of the meat so long as the hearb there lyeth. And Diodorus writeth that the much eating of Basil doth ingender abundance of lice.

The Phisicke helpes.

For the temperament and quallitie of the Basil, Authors do not agree, for *Auicen* writeth that it is hot and drie in the second degree, but *Galen* and *Aegineta* write, that the Basil is heating in the second degree, and that it hath a certain excrement moisture, for the which cause, it is thought dangerous to receiue

to receiue inward, but outward to be anoynted, it doth put away and digeſt. And now the ſmelling to the Baſil doth comforte the braine, and yet the ſmell thereof doth greatly harme a weake braine. And the ſeedes ought to be gathered in the month of Iuly, for then they be beſt. And the leaues ſodden and drunk, doth take away the ſwimming of the head: And the like doth the hearb preuaile; if it be ſtieped for a night in wine, and after drunk. And the hearb ſodden in wine, doth cauſe it to be pleaſant of ſmell, & heateth a colde ſtomack, and helpeth digeſtion: and the pouder of the hearb drunk with the iuce of ſlowes, for eight dayes together, doth help an outward rupture. And the decoction of this hearb in water, and the ſame applyed like a foment aboute the priuie place, doth both cleanſe the matrice, and drawe downe the tearmes. And the iuce of Baſil drunk of women in trauell with childe, doth not onely moue forward the birth, but cleanſeth the after birth: and the hearb ſodden in wine and oyle, and applyed to the fundament, dooth ceaſſe the often deſire to the ſtoole: and beeing boyled in raine water, and drunke with a little pouder of the iuce of ſlowes, doth help the flixe of the belly proceeding of colde. The ſeedes drawen by the noſthrils, prouoke ſneeſing: and being mixed with ſhomakers blacke, doth take away warts, and maketh them riſe vp by the rootes. And the ſeedes drunk, do ſoften the belly and put away winde: and beeing drunk in wine, do put away all melancholly ſadnes, ſtirre vp the minde, cauſe boldnes vnto the fearfull, and make merry the ſad. And the Baſil helpeth the ſtomacke, for that it digeſteth hard meates, and profitable it is both to the Liuer and hart. And the hearb bruſed & mixed with barly meale, and vineger, and that laid in plaiſter forme, doth help inflamations of the Lungs. And the ſauour of Baſil, doth help the ſtopping of the braine and noſe, purgeth the head, & ſtaieth the rewme. And the iuce of Baſil droped into the eyes, doth cleanſe the miſtes of the eyes, and running of them: and the hearb eaten woorketh the like. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Baſil.

Of the ordring, care and secrets, of the sweete Marioram. Cap. 30.

Marioram for the pleasant smell, is an hearb much esteemed of all persons, and may either be sowen in seedes, or set in slips: and it loueth to be set in olde dung (the earth before well digged vp) and to be set in moist and shadowey places. for so it groweth the fuller and big, but set in an open and sunny place, it groweth the shorter and crisped. It may either be sowen or set in the spring time, & remoued to beds well dressed with drie dung, for so it prosperety the better.

The Phisicke helpes.

Marioram is hot and drie in the second degree, & ought to be gathered in the sommer when it floureth, and after dried in a shadowey place, for so it will serue for a yeare. And now the Marioram sodden in lie, and the head washed with the same, doth cease the grieuous paine therof. Also the Marioram comforteth the braine, openeth the stopping of the members, and taketh away the disease called Apoplexia. And the pouder of the Marioram, giuen with meat, or drunk in wine, doth heat the coldenes of the stomack, and comforteth digestion. And the drye leaues brought to pouder & annointed with honye, do take away blacke and blew spots of the skin. And the oyle of Marioram doth heat aswel the inner members as the outward, and the ioynts and sinewes. And the oyle also doth heal womens places: & aplied warm doth help all griefes, comforteth the braine, & all the members of the body. Also this hearb hath the propertye of heating all the inner members, softneth the milt, and asswageth the swelling therof. The decoction of the hearb drunk, doth help the water beginning betwene the skin, the straightnes of making water, & the griping of the body. And the flours & hearb laid in a fine bag, & that aplied to the stomack, doth take away the paine & griefe therof. And the pouder of the Marioram drawen vp into the nose, dooth both cleanse and likewise heate the head, and may serue all persons for the like cause. And the vapour of the decoction of this hearbe

receiued

receiued beneath, dooth cleanse the matrice: and the hearbe made in a pessarie, and applied vppe, doth draw downe the termes. The hearbe with waxe applied in plaister forme on loose members, doth strengthen them, aswageth swellings, and other griefes. And the pouder of the Marioram, with a little Ginger, drawn vp in the nose, doth prouoke sneesings and staieth rume. These hitherto of the properties of the Marioram.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Marigolde.

Cap. 31.

The Marigold is a floure very well knowen, and to bee found in most gardens at this day, which renueth euery moneth, and is to be found as well in winter as in sommer. And this is named (of the Italians) the monethly floure or floure of euery month. And this floure also of certaine, is named the Husbandmans Diall, for that the same so aptly declareth the houres of morning and euening, by the opening and shutting of it. Also it is named the sunnes floure, for that after the rising of the Sunne vnto none, this floure openeth larger and larger, but after the none time, vnto the setting of the Sunne, it closeth and shutteth more and more: so after the setting of the Sunne, the floure is then wholy shut vp together. Marigold seeds be commonly sowen in a well laboured and dressed ground, and in the increase of the mone, for so they prosper the better. And to haue them grow big, and to beare thicke and brode floures, you must remoue and set the young plants often, and this alwaies in the increase of the Mone, and that you also put many seeds into one hole together, and water them in the springing vp. And if in the remouing you set them thin, they prosper the better.

The Phisicke helpes.

The floures being steeped in vinegar and salt, may be kept for two yeares. And now the floures drunke in wine, doth comfort the stomack, procure an appetite to meat, consume the humors of the stomacke, and heat a colde stomacke. And the rind of the root sodden in wine and drunke, dooth both digest the euill humors, and helpeth the diseases of the liuer.

And the pouder of the rind of the root, mixt with the iuice of Fenell, a litle wine, and a litle oyle, and boyled togeather into a thicknes, and a litle waxe put vnto the same, making therof an ointment, with the which annoint the milt or cold stomacke, and it dooth mightily helpe. And the iuice of the leaues dropped into the eares, doth slea the wormes. And the rinds brought to pouder, and laid on euill Pushes, dooth heale them. And the iuice of the hearbe and roote made in glister forme and applied, dooth helpe the palsie members. And to women hauing their breastes swollen through the stay of monthly courses, let the floures of the Margolde, the Spikenard, and wine be ministred, which both doth aswage the swelling, and prouoke the Termes (as writeth *Matheus Siluaticus.*) And against the pissing of bloud, take floures of the Marigolde, and boyle the same, and then drinke thereof, and it will stay in short time. And the water distilled of the floures, doth heale al the griefes of the eies, whether the same be caused of heat or of cold, and cleareth the eies: also it putteth away all griefes of the head. These hitherto of the properties of the Marigold.

Of the ordering and care of the Lauender. Cap. 32.

Lauender is an hearbe swet in smelling, and at this day growing in most gardens: of the which be two kinds, the one growing high, and sending foorth a great sauour, which for that it giueth no lesse sauor than the Spike, is of the same named Spikenard: and the other, both in the largenes of the leafe and sauor, is lesser. And for that the same is occupied in baths, and in the washing of hands, for the swetnes of smel, therefore of most men named the Lauender. Also the first is named the Male, & the other the Female, as sundry authors write. And now the Lauender ioyeth to bee set in an open and Sunny place, and in stony earth, for so it prospereth the better.

The Phisicke helpes.

Lauender hath the vertue of heating and dryng, but profiteth not vnto the digestion of meat. And now if any aplieth the Lauender often to the nose in smelling thereto, it doth both

both comfort and cleare the sight. And who so boyleth Lauender in water, and that a shirt wette in the same, and after dried again be worne, no Louse after will abide in that shirt, so long as the shirt keepeth the smell. And the floures haue singular vertues, especially to the helping of the Apoplexie. Also the floures steeped in wine, and after distilled, and of the same holden in the mouth, doth recouer the speech lost, proceeding of the Apoplexie. And Lauender hath many other vertues besides: for the same helpeth al the cold griefs of the braine, crampe, and gripings of the body, proceeding of colde: It helpeth also the stopping of the milt, heateth the belly, and sendeth downe the tearmes. And this hearbe, (with the floures shread) ought to be distilled in Iune, which drunke vnto the quantity of two ounces, doth helpe the gidines of the head, and the like if the water be rubbed all ouer the head, and so let drie in of it selfe: And the same water in like quantity vsed, doth help the cramp, the Apoplexie, the astonishing and the trembling of the members, and hands. Also this water helpeth the palsie members, if they be often annointed and rubbed with it: and likewise helpeth the heauines in the mouing of the tongue, by drinking three ounces at a time. Also it helpeth vlcers and paines of the teeth, if the same be often holden in the mouth. And the same water helpeth well the blistering of the mouth, if the mouth bee washed with it. These hitherto of the properties of Lauēder.

Of the ordering and care of the Spikenard. Cap. 33.

THe Spikenard groweth like vnto the Lauender, saoing that the leaues be thicker and bigger, and beareth also a longer stalke and bigger floures, which bee of purple colour like to the Lauender. and hath besides greater vertues. And now the Spikenard loueth to bee set in a fat earth, well laboured and dressed, and in an open and Sunny place of the garden.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Spikenard is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second, & causeth vrine. And if of the decoction of it be a plaster made & the same laid to the priuy place, staieth the superfluous

fluous course of the tearmes, and taketh away the humors of womens places. And the Spikenard drunke with cold water, puts away the weaknes and trembling of the heart. And this Spikenard infused in Lie, and the head washed therwith, doth cause the haire to grow, and helpeth the sheading of the haire. And the oyle of the Spike, well drawne by glasse, is marueilous sweet, and hath many vertues, and especially vnto the palsie members, if they be annointed therewith. And the said oile dooth ease the gout, and all other griefes of the ioyntes. Also this oile dooth helpe the swellings of the stomacke, the diseases of the Liuer, the kidneis, and the kings euill. The decoction of the Spikernade, helpeth against the palsie of the tongue, comforteth the sinews, and drieth vppe the moisture, occupying the instrument of the tongue. And the floures of the Spikenard infused in wine, and set in the sunne for a certaine space, in a narrow mouth glasse wel stopped, and after distilled by glasse in *Balneo Maria*, with a soft fire (& if the fresh floures may be had, then need you not to infuse them in wine) it is verie precious, and being discretlie vsed, helpeth all colde griefes as well within as without the bodie. Also the griefes of the head and braine, if a linnen cloath dipped in the same, bee applied to the nose. And the same water helpeth the rume, and distilling of the head. And this water drunk, vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, doth helpe the Collicke passion, proceeded of colde: and it ceaseth the paines and giddines of the head, proceeding of a colde cause, if the noule of the head, and for-head be annointed therewith. And this water helpeth the cold and palsie member, heating them, and putting away the shaking of them. These hitherto of the properties of Spikenard.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the white Lillie.
Cap. 34.

The white Lillie, for the beautie and smell, is affirmed of Plinie, to bee next to the Rose, and higher of growth than the most floures of the garden. And the increase of this Lillie is marueilous, in that one root sendeth forth, and yeeldeth

(for

(for the most parte) fiftie heads. And Palladius willeth the Lillie to be planted in the monthe of October, Nouember and March, and that in a fat and well dressed earth, & the heads set a span or a foote asunder, like as is taught hereafter in the setting of Garlike. And to make them to beare purple flowers, gather (as Pliny teacheth) to the nũber of ten or twelue stalkes in the moneth of Julye, or when they floure, which binde togither and hang in the smoake, and after that, slip off the leaues, making the stalkes naked, which steepe in red wine lies, in the month of March (so long) until the knots of the stalkes haue sufficiently drunke in, and appeare well coloured as a purple, and then set the stalkes into the earth, hauing the winelies hanging both on the stalkes and rotes, and those after shall send forth and beare purple floures.

And Florentinus writeth, that the floures of Lillies will thewe red, if that betwẽ the rinde and the smal heads growing about the rote, you poure of the fine pouder of vermilion, or els the pouder of red lead, regarding that you harme not the smal heads growing about. And likewise dying thẽ of any other colour, euen of the same colour will the floures growe: as if you list to haue either grene or blewe Lilles.

And to haue Lillies all the yeare, take the buds not opened, with some of the stalke, those put into a newe earthen pot not glased, and after stop close the mouth of the pot, and when you shall need them, then set them on the side of a Bason in the Sun, and after they haue felt a while the warmth, they will open and spread abroad. And Anotolius writeth, that you may haue Lillies at diuers times of the yeare, if in the proper time of the year you set some of the heads twelue fingers deep, other eight fingers deep, and other but four fingers, and thus in the growing vp will they beare floures at sundry times one after an other. On this wise may many other floures be made growe, and to beare at diuers times.

The Phisick helps.

The white Lille is hot and drye of quallitie, but the flours be of a temperate qualitie. And the oyle of Lillies do greatly profit, by annoynting on the belly, for that it heateth wo-

mens places, and softneth the humours there hardned. The roote sodden and laid on hot impostumes, doth ripen them. And the roote roasted in hot embers and brused, and after mixed with Rosewater, and the same laide on the holy fire, doth heale the same if it be daylye vsed: and in the like sorte laid on woundes, doth increase the flesh on them. The root sodden and brused and mixed with Barrowes grease or oyle Oliue, and after laide on impostumes, doth mightily soften them: and of the Lillie is made a good ointment on this wise. Take of the white Lillie roots, of the roots of Bramker sine, and of marsh Mallowe roots of eacha quarter of a pound, all these bruse togither verye well in foure measures of wine, and after seeth all in halfe a pinte of oyle, vnto a thickneſſe, which straine through a linnen cloth, putting therto a little waxe, and make therof an oyntmente, and annoynt it on the hard milt on the left side, and it will greatly help, for that it doth not only soften the same, but putteth away the paines therof. Item the root of the Lillie sodden, and after boyled with oyle of Roses, and annoynted, doth heale burnings.

Also the root sodden in wine and the same drunk in the euening at the going to bed, doth purge down-ward all noysome humors of the body. And the leaues sodden in vineger and laid plaister wise, doth heale wounds. And the root rosted and mixed with honye, and that laid plaister-wise, doth heale loose and cut sinewes. These hitherto of the properties of the Lillie.

Of the ordring, care and secrets, of the Wood Lillie. Cap. 35.

The wood Lillie or Lillie of the valley, is a flour meruailous swéte, flowring especially in the spring time, and growing properly in woods, but chiefly in valeies and on the sides of hilles. But now for the great commoditie and vse known (of the flours) the same of late yeares is brought and planted in gardens. And this hearb springeth vp with two leaues togither, in fashion like the white Lillie, and in the middle springeth vp a small slender stalke: in the top of which growe forth little small flours, in a manner white, and of a

pleasant

pleasant smell. And the rote of it is white within the earth but wrinckled without. And this Lillie loyeth to be set in a moyste grounde and shadowey place of the Garden, for so it prospereth the better. The commodities of this floure, is alwaies had in the spring time.

The Phisicke helpes.

The wood Lillie is colde and moist in the second degre, and the floures be of greater effecte then the hearb, and the root passeth the floures in vertue. The floures drunk in new wine, doth strengthen the hart, the braine, the liuer & all the spirituall members (as they do name them) and of the same is aptly ministred vnto the panting of the hart, giddines of the head, the falling sicknes, the apoplexie and frensines.

It doth also help those which be pained with a trembling of the hart, and prickings about the hart, and the members which shake & tremble. Moreouer, it doth also stop the passages of the Leaprie beginning, that the same spread no further abroad. And it doth put away the scab & ringworme, being annointed vpon, and the sooner if you wash them sundrye times with the water. Furthermore, it asswageth the swellinges of the stinges of Bees, Waspes, and such like, by striking or annointing the water vpon them. And the water of the distilled wine, doth put away the inflamation and mist of the eyes, by often vsing the same. And some distill this water for the aboue named diseases, on this wise.

First they take the floures and lay them to stiep for a monethin new wine, and then taking them quite frō the wine, they will distill fiue times in a Limbeck or body of glasse, which wine so distilled, is more precious then golde: for if any drinke of this water, with six grains of pepper & a little of the Lauender water, he need not after fear the Apoplexie that month. And *Otho Brunfelsius* teacheth the making of the water on this wise. First take a gallō glasse filled with the best olde wine, into which put a pound of floures, setting the same in the Sun for 40. daies, after distil it in a limbek of glas twice ouer, into which put a little Lauender water & peper.

But other take olde wine, putting in to the same a pound of the floures, and after forty daies standing in the Sunne, distil the same, into which put of the floures of Lauender & Rosemary, and some good spices, distilling it ouer againe, & then keep it as a most precious water, well stopped in a narrowe mouthed glasse: and a spoonefull of this water giuen to the pacient at the point of death, doth reuiue & prolong his life vntill his naturall time appointed. And it doth comfort the braine, helpeth the Apoplexie, ceasseth the collicke passion, & helpeth the impostume hapning in the hinder part of the braine: also this distilled water giueth a good memory and ready wit, by anoynting the hinder part or noule of the head and forhead therwith. And the water of the floures only distilled in the middle of the spring, and drunk vnto the quantity of six ouncesat a time, doth help those which be poisoned. And the same water helpeth the bite of a mad dog, the birth childe, comforteth the braine, the hart and the senses, and also putteth away the falling sicknes, if the same be drūk for forty dayes togither. And the same water drunk, helpeth the strangury, the pricking about the hart, inflamation of the Liuer, and doth stay the excesse of the month courses. These hitherto of the properties of the wood Lillie.

Of the ordring and care, of the Floure-deluce. Chap. 36.

The Flour-deluce is a floure wel knowne to all persons, bearing leaues both bigger, flatter and larger then that called the Sedge. And the rote and hearb nedeth no other diligence of setting, then to be planted in a drye earth, well laboured and dressed about the beginning of March. And the rotes growe into ioyntes, solide, and very swete smelling: which some plucke vp about the beginning of the spring, and cutting them into round slyces, after stitche them through with a needle, and hang them vp to drye in the shadow.

And those rotes also be best commended which be verye short, very hard, somwhat red, swete smelling, biting in the taste, and which in the beating of it in a morter, causeth the person to sneze.

The

The Phisicke helpes.

The roote of the floure Deluce, is onely vsed in medicine, and is hot and dry of qualitie in the second degree: and it is verie profitable against the cough, in extenuating those humours of the breast, which hardly are spit forth. And it also purgeth the grosse flegmatike and chollericke humors: and taking sixe drams of the root, with water and hony, and the same drunke, prouoketh sleepe, staieth the tearmes, and ceaseth the griefes of the body. And being drunke with vinegar, doth helpe the diseases of the milt, the crampe, the colde shaking, which comes before the fit of an Ague, and helpeth also the sheading of the Sperme: and drunke in wine, prouoketh monethly courses. And the decoction thereof applied to the womans priuy part, doth soften the hardnesse thereof, and likewise open the stopping thereof: and mixed with turpentine, by annointing, dooth ease the griefes of the loynes and hips. And the pouder onely drawne vp into the nose, prouoketh sneezing, and cleanseth the head. And by chawing the root in the mouth, dooth amend a stincking breath, and taketh away the strong sauour comming from the armeholes. And the greene fresh root boyled, and the same laid plaister-wise, doth soften wens, and other hard impostumes.

And the pouder of the dry root, mixed with honny, and the same thicke laid on vlcers, dooth cleanse them: and the same aplied plaster wise, doth draw out the bones in wounds and doth couer againe the bare flesh. And the pouder of the root applied plaister-wise to the forhead, doth greatly helpe the paine and griefe of the head. Also the pouder of the root, mixt with the pouder of the white Nose wort, and two parts of hony, the same annointed, doth take away the pimples of the face, and al spots caused by the sun. And against the dropsie, take a new laid Eg, pouring out the white, and to the yolk put so much of the iuice of the root as was of the white, after set the same Egge a while in hot embers, which being sufficiently warme, sup of fasting in the morning, and the patient shall after send foorth a marueilous aboudance of water betweene the skinne and the siege: and this hath bene often ex-

perienced. These hitherto of the properties of the Floure-deluce.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Pionie. Cap. 37.

Pionie is an hearbe at this day well knowen, of the which be two kinds, the Male, and the Female. It groweth after this manner. The leaues thereof be hard, from the neather part, and in colour like vnto Horehound, and the roots cleauing together like to the rots of Violets, and bee reddish in colour, bearing big and purple floures, and resembling the forme of the red Rose, hauing within the floure a yellowish sæd like to the Rose, of which come the cods, in fashion like to Almonds, and grow together, hauing within red sæds, to the bignesse of the smaller pease. And the stalk also, on which the sæds grow, beareth big and reddish flours, which of some is named the blessed Rose: but the sæd of most, is named the blessed Rose. And the sæds ioy to bee sowen in a well dressed earth, and to bee wæded about at the comming vp of the plants.

The Phisicke helps

The root of Pionie heateth and drieth in the second degree, and indureth for ten yeares in his efficacie, and hath also the vertue of comforting and cherishing the body, & causeth besides vrine, and purgeth the liuer and kidneis: which root boyled in wine and drunke, doth purge the bloud. And the root of the Piony is aptly ministred vnto women in child bed, being not throughly purged after the birth of child, for that the same causeth the comming downe of the tearmes, and purgeth them so without harme: and the quantity of an Almond is to be ministred at a time. Also the root boiled in wine and drunke, dooth helpe the gripings of the belly, and sheading of the gall: and likewise it helpeth the paines of the kidneis and bladder, if the same be with any stopping of the vrine. And a smoake made of the little fine branches of the root, and receiued into the nose, doth put away the kings euill. And the Pionie root doth take away blacke spots of the bodie. Also the root hanged about the necke, doth put away the falling sickneſſe: as by a late practise was tried, that while

a Child

a Childe had this root hanging about the necke, so long hee was not grieued with this disease, but when the same was taken from his necke, then was he vexed in like sort as before: and this did the male Pionie root, but the seeds doe not the like. And this may the male be known from the female. The Female Pionie root boyled in wine and drunke, doth aptlie purge women after the birth of child, and the same also doth the seeds of it. And in other matters, the roots of both haue in a manner the like properties. And the fielde root of the Pionie, as *Menardus* writeth, worne about the necke, dooth put away the vapours flying vp to the braine, and strengtheneth the braine: but the male onely doth this, which beareth leaues like vnto the VValnut, hauing a white root of a finger thickneſſe, and a ſpanne long. And certaine will, that the root be digged vp in the waine of the Moone, ſhe then being vnder the earth. The ſeedes of the Piony doe helpe eſpecially the termes of women, which ſend them downe, and the dead yongling: which being drunke in wine, doth helpe the hard deliuerie of childe. Alſo the ſeedes of Pionie bruiſed with Set wall, Galingale, and ſugar, of each a like waight, that ſame pouder taken morning and euening, dooth put away poiſon, and gently looſeth the belly. And ten or twelue ſeeds of the pionie drunke in olde wine, doe ſtay the ſuperfluous courſes of women: and fifteene ſeeds drunke (of the black) in either water and honny, or wine, do helpe the night mare, the ſtrangling of the ſecrets and paines of the matrice. And the pouder of the ſeeds of pionie miniſtred in meat & drink to children, dooth ſend foorth the ſtone beginning in them. And the pouder of the root of pionie (miniſtred in wine) in which the root it ſelfe, and Mugwort ſhall be boyled, dooth helpe the falling ſickneſſe. And the ſame pouder boiled in Caſtorie and drunke, helpeth the palſie. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Pionie.

Of the ordering, and care of the white Poppie. Cap. 38.

The white Poppie muſt bee ſowen in hot and drie places, like as you doe other pot-hearbes. It is thought that this hearbe

hearb doth the better come vp there, where as twigs or rods and shrubs of trees be burnt. But the Poppie and Dill, haue the like condicions and ordering of sowing, which the Charuill hath. And Palladius willeth the Poppie to be sowen in September, in hot and dry places among the pothearbs, and yet in temperate and cold places, in the moneths of Januarie, Februarie, March, and Nouember, either alone or with other hearbes.

The Phisick helpes.

Poppy is cold and dry in the first degree: yet as touching the kinds, the white Poppy is cold and moist, and the blacke cold and dry, which doth more mortifie. And the seedes of the white gathered in the Sommer when they bee ripe, may wel be kept for fiue yeares, which haue the vertue of prouoking or causing sleepe, and of aswaging. And now to prouoke sleep, make a plaister of the white Poppy seeds bruised, and mixed with the white of an Egge and womens milke, which apply hot to the forehad, and on the temples. And the women of Salerne giue to their children the pouder of the white Poppy with milke, to cause them to sleepe. And the seeds of the white Poppy, or the hearbe it selfe bruised, and mixed with the oile of Roses, and this laid plaister-wise on vlcers proceeded of a bruise, dooth draw out the great heat. And the same applied to a hot liuer, doth much helpe. And the pouder of white Poppy seeds, mixed with Oyle Oliue, and annointing the ridge of the backe with it, dooth take away the ache of the ioynts, and strengtheneth them. And the iuice of the white Poppie mixed with the oyle of Roses, and annointing the feet therewith, doth put away the paine and ach of the hot gout. And the seedes of the white Poppy beaten to pouder, and mixed with the Oyle of Violets, and annointing the backe bone therewith, doth helpe both the burning of the Ague, and heat of the liuer.

These hitherto of the properties of the white Poppie.

Of

Of the ordring, care and secrets of the floure Petilius. Chap. 39.

THe floure named Petilius, which of the Frenchmen is named the little Indian eye, must be sowen in the midst of sommer, that in the ende of harueſt it may ware to a trée and bring foorth floures vnto winter. It is also sowen in the sædes and set in slips: but the slips alwaies die through the sharp colde of the winter (howsoeuer they be tender) and yet they refuse no ground. But they prosper best in a fat ground and shoote vp a mightie heigth, so that they appeare bushie, and spread into many branches, like a mightie trée or great stalke, resembling nærest to the swéete Briar trée.

Of the ordring and care, of the Veluet floure, or floure Armour. Chap. 40.

THis floure (in a manner) neuer decayeth, but kæpeth still his colour, and the flour also is eared. much like to an ear of corne, very purple of colour and beautifull to beholde, yet the same hath neither smell nor taste. And it properly groweth vp in the month of August, and endureth vnto harueſt. And when all other floures be withered and dead, and it also in a maner withered, then after the moistning with water, it doth recouer again, and serueth to make winter garlands.

And this floure is sowen in many places in pots of earth, that growing from August, it may flourish vnto October, in which time bearing the floure, it is to be gently and tenderly gathered. And the floures so gathered, to be put into an Ouen (after the drawing of bread) and there gently dryed: after which, the Maydens of Fraunce and of other Countries, doe lay them charilye vp and kæpe them vntill winter time to make garlands of them, and to hang them about the house.

And now of this floure, is hére sufficiently written, which although it be not to be counted vpon amongst the smelling floures, yet for the beautie thereof, woorthy to be sowen in Gardens.

The Phisick helpes.

The hearbe named floure Armour, is of quantity colde and drie in the third degree. And the floure of this boyled in wine and honny, and drunke: dooth helpe the perrillous fluxe of bloud, and the continual paine of the often scouring of the belly, and staieth also the aboundance of the reddes in women, and the white fluxes of the bellie. Also the same helpeth the spitting of bloud, especially when any vessell or part in the Lungs or breast shall be broken. And the hearbe sodden and laid plaister wise on bruised members, doth put away clotted bloud, and healeth the places spedily. And the floures boyled in wine and drunke, doth heale the biting of any venemous woormes, and the Sciaticke, the distilling of the vrine, and a Rupture. And the pouder of this hearbe, to the quantitie of three halpence in waight, druncke in white wine, doth staie the rume distilling from the head. And the hearbe sodden in wine, and the fundament fomented therewith, doth stay and take away the fluxe, and the piles: and in the same manner applied, dooth helpe the often desire vnto the stoole. And the root holden in the mouth, dooth cease the paine of the teeth. And the rootes bruised and mixt with May butter, and of that made an ointment, which annointed on inflamations, doth asswage them. And the hearbe dooth keepe cloathes and garments from being harmed by worms and moathes. These hitherto of the properties of the veluet floure.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Gilifloure. Cap. 41.

THe Gilifloure for his sweetnes and beauty, is named of the Frenchmen the litle ele, and of the Italians *Garyophilon*, for that it giueth a sweete smell and sauor, like vnto Cloues. The sæds of the Gilifloure be seldome sowen: but at the beginning of the spring, and haruest, you may breake off slips from the root, and set them againe (being weathed at the end) in a halfe Tubbe or Pot, the earth therein made fat with rotten dung, and when the frostes oppresse and nippe them in the Winter time, then may they bee remooued, and set vnder some couert, in places safe from the bitter colde:

And

And in faire dayes when as the sunne shineth warme, then set the pot or halfe tubbe abroad, that the plantes may so be comforted with the warmenesse of the Ayre, and you may sometimes suffer the plantes to be moistned a little with a gentle raine. And after those plantes being set in beds, do spread in the sommer into smal branches, then do the Gardners slip them off from the greater stalkes, about the fet of them, before the Cups at the tops (where the flours appear) be sprung out. And after this manner you may dresse & set out a whole bed with a fewe plantes, if you will. There be some which take Cloues and bruse them, lapping them about the stalkes nere to the rotes, and some make holes through with a bodkin, that the flours after sprung up may sauour of them. And there be some others which write, that by the often remouing & setting of the plant, the flours spred the broader & pleasanter to the eye. And Cardanus writeth that you may haue Gilly flowres (in a manner) vnto Hollontide, if scraping of the vpper rinde of the plants, you set them againe with the rotes in horse dung, which so causeth them to beare faire flours in the winter, if you kep them from the cold aire. And certain new practicioners write that you may make one stalk to bring forth flours of many colours, if you take the seeds of euery colour of Gilliflours and put them altogither into a thin small reed, or perdle of a shep or goat, or els tyed vp in a thin worne linnen cloth, setting the same in earth well mixed with dung, which after the watering will cause the plāt to come vp, bearing the like number of colors in one stalke as there were sedes sowen. And there be some which write that if you mixe the Basil sedes with the Gilly floure seds, and vse them as before said, that they will spring togither on one stalke: and the leaues of the flowres put into a glasse of vineger, and set in the sunne for certaine dayes, do make a pleasant vineger.

Of the ordring and care, of the Strawberries. Chap. 42.

The Strawberrie is accounted among those hearbs that grow in the fieldes of their owne accorde. And the Berries be much eaten at all mens tables in the sommer, for the

pleasantnes of them, which for a more delight in eating, they dresse with wine and suger. The rehearsall of the forme of this hearb needeth not, seeing the same is well known vnto all persons. And it aptly groweth in shadowey places, and rather vnder the shadowe of other hearbes, then alone. And the plantes set in Gardens, will growe vnto the bignes of a Mulberry, if the earth before in the beds be well dressed, and diligently tended of the Gardner. But the hearb of it selfe continueth not aboue a yeare.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Berries be colde and moiste in the third degree, and the like is the hearb. And *Vigonius* writeth, that the Strawberrie leaues be of a colde quallitie, so that the iuce of them with the wine of the Pomgranets, and a little Rose-water mixed togither and applyed, doth help hot impostumes in the beginning, and in the increase of them. And the Strawberrie leaues vsed in a bath, doe greatly help the stone. And for the mightye paines of the hips, take three or four handes full of the Straw-berrie leaues, seething them in water, and after bath the pacient from the nether part vpward: which so doone, then annoynte the grieued place with this oyntmente following. Take the oyntment of marsh Mallowes, one ounce, of honye halfe an ounce, of wax a dram weight, al these mixe togither, making therof an oyntment: and this doth not only help the ache of the hips, but softneth the matter hardned in them, and prouoketh vrine. And the Berries be profitable to men, in that they take away the vnnaturall heate, & do especially proffit the chollerick persons, for that they coole and moisten them. Also take of the iuce of the Berries, and of Plantaine water, of each of them eight ounces, of Rosed honye two ounces, of the iuce of the Mulberries one ounce, of Albigræci and of Balaustia, of each a dram, all these mixe togither, washing the mouth therwith, which so helpeth the impostumes of the throate. And this hearb eaten with meate, doth help such as are diseased in the milte:

and

and the like dooth the iuice of the hearbe drunke: and the same iuice giuen with white pepper, dooth helpe the short winded: and the Berries also doe stay thirst, profite the stomacke, especially of the chollericke. And the decoction of the roots drunke, doth qualifie the Liuer, beeing taken morning and euening. And the like dooth the decoction of the hearbe and root together, both qualifie the heat of the liuer, and cleanse the raines and bladder. And the best distilling of the Berries, is when they be ripe, but not ouer soft: and those which grow in the hilly woods be the better. And now the distilled water drunke, or mixt with somwhat and so drunk, doth qualifie the vnnaturall heat, and staieth thirst. And the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitye of foure ounces at a time, dooth helpe the Leaprye, and purgeth the bloud, by drinking of it in wine, or otherwise eaten with bread, and cleanseth the foule scabbe of the bodie: and in the same manner drunke, doth helpe the liuer, the kings euill, looseth the breast, comforteth the heart, purgeth the bloud, and preuaileth against the stone in the loyns, kidneis, and bladder. Also it helpeth vlcers of the throate, the grieuous swellinges of the same, and the stincke of the mouth, if any gargell the same in the mouth or throate: and drunke of women, doth cleanse them, and send downe their tearmes. Also it healeth all filthy corruptions of the legs, if they be washed morning & euening with the same, or with linnen wet and applied. And it cureth filthy wounds, if they shall be washed in the same water, or vsing to drinke of the water. Also it putteth away the swelling of the face, if the face be sundry times washed therwith, and mixed with salt: and distilled once ouer againe, it doth both coole and cleare the eies. These hitherto of the properties of the Strawberries.

Of the ordering and care of the Borage, and also of the Bugloss. Cap. 43.

BOrage is sowen in the moneth of August, and September, and best sowen in the moneth of Aprill, either a-

lone in beddes, or about the borders of newe beddes of other hearbes. And it cannot aptly be sowen in any other time of the yeare, yet may the same plant after the comming vp bee very well remooued in any time (in a manner) of the yeare, and the sædes ought to be gathered but halfe ripe least they other-wise fall out of the huskes. And the hearbe with the sæds, after the plucking vp, must be laid together on a heape, for the space of two or three daies, that the sæds may so come vnto their full ripenesse. And when conuenient time so serueth, then you may rub the seeds foorth on a linnen cloath, for otherwise you cannot aptly come by them: which seedes thus had, may well bee kept for two yeares. And the Bugloss, which the Romaines name the Ore tongue, and with vs Langde-bæfe, hath the like order in sowing and vsing of the seedes, which the Borage hath. And yet some write, it ioyeth to bee sowen in an open and sunny place, and that the earth be wel laboured and dressed before, for so it prospereth the better. And the Bugloss also for his singular vertues, deserueth in al gardens to be sowen as a right necessary hearbe.

The Phisicke helpes.

Borage, which of *Galen* and *Dioscorides* is named the Bugloss, is hot and moist in the first degree. Which the self same *Galen* witnesseth (writing) that the Bugloss is of a moist and temperate hotnesse, so that being put into wine in the drinking, causeth gladnesse and mirth. And the Borage boiled in wine, and so drunke: doth engender good bloud. And those which be pained with the giddines of the head, let them take the iuice of this hearbe, and mixing the same with sugar, drinke thereof, which doth throughly helpe the same. And the iuice of the hearbe with Senee, if the same shall be mixed with the sirope of Borage, and drunke morning and euening, doth increase the senses, and putteth away melancholie. And the raw floures eaten, doe cause good bloud, and put away the trembling of the heart: and they worke the like effect, if the floures be drunke in wine. And the sirope of borage is vsed against the kings euil. And the floures dried and

kept

kept but a yeare, doe serue all those diseases, which the hearb it selfe helpeth. And the floures put to oyle Oliue, and set in the Sunne for a time, with the which annointing the stomak and region of the heart, it doth greatly comfort. And the distilled water (in *Balneo Maria*) of the hearb and root drunke morning and euening, to the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, doth put away the gripings and swellings of the belly, helpeth the bloudie flixe, and the hardnes of fetching wind: and the same in like order drunke, dooth comfort the heart and braine, and increaseth memory and witte, purgeth the bloud, and putteth away frenzines. And linnen cloathes wet in that place, and laid to any place, where either Spider or waspe hath venomed, dooth quickly take away the paine thereof. And red Sarcenet wet in the water, and laid to the eies, dooth take away the paine thereof, and cleareth them. And the distilled water of the floures drunke, doth helpe all the aboue-said diseases which the hearbe dooth, yet the same is the more precious, for that it dooth purge the bloud, putteth awaye melancholie, and marueilously purge the heart. And the same water helpeth all distillations of the head, by drinking euerie euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time. And it also greatly preuaileth against the burning Agues, and the Iaundize, and cooleth moreouer the liuer, either by drinking, or wetting clothes in the same, and so aplied often on the region of the Liuer.

And now the Bugloſſe hath the same vertues which the borage hath, and is hot and moist in the first degree: For the Bugloſſe also being drunke in wine, doth helpe such diseased in the Lungs, troubled with a drie cough, and boiled in water and honny mixed together (as *Galen* writeth) doth help the coughing through the roughnesse of the throate. And the Bugloſſe steeped in wine, and tempered with Millecrate, and after drunke, dooth cause mirth: and often drunke in V Vine, doth purge the red choller, proceeding of ouermuch heat, and in like manner helpeth the Cardiacke passion, and dooth also put away the hurtfull humours of the Lungs.

And

And the iuice drunke with warm water, doth take away the swelling of the feet: also the wine in which the Bugloſſe shal be steeped, drunke: doth maintaine a good memory, comfort the heart, and engendreth good bloud. And the distilled water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time with sugar, doth help those diseased with the bloudy flix, the hardnes of fetching wind, and the beſtraught of minde, or hauing a weake braine: and the same water helpeth against al hot sicknesses: as the agues, the diseases of the Lungs, the liuer, and the milt, it purgeth also the bloud, and putteth away the pricking of the hart and stomacke. And the said water of Bugloſſe, putteth away the Iaundize, cleanseth the Leaprie and scab, and mittigateth the distillings of the head, and it ceaseth the paine and burning of the eies, if linnen cloathes dipped in the water, be applied either to the forehead, or eies: and in the same maner applied, it dooth take awaye the ringing or sound of the eares. And the floures of the Bugloſſe distilled in *Balneo Maria*, doe yeilde a precious water to comfort the heart and braine, being drunke either with pouder of pearles, or with the confection of *Manus Christi*, made with pearles. These hitherto of the properties both of Borage and Bugloſſe.

Of the ordering and care of Roſemarie. Cap. 44.

The Roſemarie is a plant of a pleasant sauour, which for the beautie and smell of it, is set (at this day) in gardens. And the Gardners also in our time, doe make diuers seates, some like to benches, and other proper formes (as liketh them best, to be delighted at) in their beds, running of length and of height. And the same plant also in medicine hath a marueilous efficacy. And *Dioscorides* nameth it the garland roſe, for that in time past they made garlands thereof. And it is named also of the Greeke Authours *Libanotis*, for that the leaues and rot of the Roſemary, doe sauour likest vnto the Frankencense. And the Roſemarie hath a hoarie and hard stalke downeward, and in the vpper part the leaues of it bee sharp, and is both greene aboue, and white vnder the leaues. And the floure of it is blewish, like to the Lauender, and hath

a

a swéet smell, sauouring like to turpentine or frankencence. And it hath also a blacke rote, full of little branches shoting out of it, and it may be set in any ground, being well laboured and dressed before: but it rather loyeth to be planted in a rotten earth, and dunged with sheepes dung.

The Phisicke helpes.

Rosemary heateth and dryeth in the second degree, and hath the vertue of softning, digesting, cutting a sunder, and cleansing. And now the Rosemary with Harts tongue stieped togither for a night in wine, and after drunke, doth put away the Kings euil. And the iuce both of the root & hearb mixed with honye, and drunke, doth help the dulnes of sight and purgeth the grosenes of humors. And the root brused and mixed with honye, and laid on vlcers, doth speedily soften them. And the root with Pellitory boyled in wine, and drunke, dooth soften the belly, and putteth away the paine therof: and the same also preuaileth against the biting of venemous beastes & wormes. Also in the same manner tempered with Mugworte, doth cause vrine, and prouoketh the tearmes of women. And the Rosemary floures tyed vp in a faire linnen cloth & boyled in wine, which drunke morning and euening, do put away the griefs of the body, but especially helpeth the griefes of the pappes. And the floures being brought to pouder and drunke in warme wine, doth make merry the minde, and comfort nature and the blood, & preserue many also from diseases which might otherwise happen. And the coles made of the wood or stalkes burnt, and the same brought to pouder and tyed in a linnen cloth, and rubbing the teeth therwith, doth make the teeth white, and slea the wormes in them. And if he which is diseased with the rewme, make a smoake of the barkes, and do holde his head ouer it, it speedily stayeth the same. And the Rosemary boyled in water and drunke, either alone or mixed with wine, dooth cause an appetite to meate. And he which is mightily dryethrough a greate heate, let him mixe the wine of the sower Pomgranets, with that water (being colde) in which the Rosemary leaues shall be boyled, and drink of the

same, & out of dout it wil help him. And the pouder of Rosmary flours eaten in reare poached egs, doth greatly strengthen nature and amendeth the blood. And the wine made of Rosemary, if you drinke a good draught thereof morning and euening, dooth cleanse the blood, prouoketh a desire to meate, expelleth all the inner humors, and helpeth a great weaknes. And the Rosemary boyled with wilde Penniroyall or Mints, in wine and oyle oliue, & that any diseased doth annoint him therwith, doth both cause him to sweat & helpeth the dropsie. And the Rosemary boyled in wine, with hearbgrace & a little pepper, & drunk, doth help the falling sickness: Also the Rosemary boyled in wine with Pellitorie, doth help the greatnes of the Euuela, if the same be gargaled in the mouth. And Rosmary with the flours boyled in wine and that drunk warme morning and euening, & neither eating nor drinking three houres after, doth help the Kings euill, the hard fetching of the breath, openeth the pipe of the lungs, causeth easie spitting forth, helpeth digestion, and ceaseth the gripings of the body & mundifieth the blood. And the floures boyled in the strongest vineger, and laid plaisterwise to the Nauill, doth stay shortly after the great flixe of the belly. These hitherto of the properties of the Rosemary.

Of the ordring and care, of the hearb Germander. Chap. 45.

The hearb Germander, which of the Latines is called the little lowe Oke of the earth, is a plant very short: which as Dioscorides **describeth, is not in the growth aboue a span high, bearing smal leaues, dented in like the Oke leaues, bitter in taste, bearing purple flours and those very small, and it also groweth of it owne accorde in rough and stony places: but now this hearb is planted in Gardens. And the sædes ought to be gathered when the hearb beareth floures, which is about the end of May, as** Galen **and** Macer **do write.**

The Phisicke helpes.

The hearb hath the vertue of heating & drying togither, vnto the third degre, & taketh away the hardnes of the splen or milt, causeth vrine, moueth the tearmes, helpeth the dropsie (& this) if in the begining of the sicknes, the pacient drink of the

of the decoctiō of the hearb thrice a day. And the hearb bearing the flours doth greatly help brused members, if they be washed with the same, or drink of the decoction of it. And the hearb brused and laide on Fistulaes in the corners of the eyes, or if oyle made of the hearb be droped into them, doth forthwith heale them, so that the pacient be of a colde complexion: but being a person of hot and drye complexion, this helpeth not. And the hearb sodden in wine & drunk doth put away the Kings euill. And the Germander sodden in wine with Fenell seedes and Seene, doth greatly helpe the stopping of the liuer and milt: and if Parcely seedes be put thereto, then the same helpeth the strangury and the stone. And the hearb boyled in wine & laid on the palsie members doth help them. The hearb also brused with oyle oliue, and laide vnto wounds, doth heale it. And the greene hearb boyled in conduite water and drunk, doth help the crampe and palsie: and the same decoction drunke, doth help the cough, the hardnes of the milt, the straightnes of making water, and the water between the skin & flesh. And this hearb sodden in wine & drunk, doth preuaile against poysons: & the same laid plaisterwise doth help the bite of venemous beasts and wormes. And the hearb boyled in wine and vineger, and drunk, doth help the hardnes of the milt, an olde cough, and olde vlcers, being mixed with honye and so drunk. And the pouder of the hearb ministred with honie, doth slea the wormes in the body. And against the rewme, heate the pouder of the hearb in a linnnen bag, and apply it on the head, which is a speciall remedy. This hearb also helpeth the blistring of the mouth, if it be washed with the decoction therof thrice a day: also it helpeth the small scab, if making an oyntmente with the hearb and barrowes greace, you annoynt the skin. These hitherto of the properties of the Germander.

Of the ordring, and care of the Blessed Thistle. Chap. 46.

CArduus benedictus, or the hearb named the blessed Thistle, is very wel known, and of great vse in medcine and hath a speciall efficacie against poysons, the plague, and diseases of the hart. And both the name and forme of the hearb

do declare it to be a kind of thistle, although there hath bene great controuersie among the ancient phisitians, of the true description of this hearb. And Ruellius saieth more exactly and better to iudge of this hearb and come nearer to a truth, who describeth the blessed Thistle to haue a big stalke and prickling, like to Endiue, with rough and crispedleaues and bearing a yellowe floure, and delighteth to be sowen in fat earth, in the garden.

The Phisick helps.

The Blessed Thistle hath the nature and qualitie of opening the stopping of members, of peircing and causing vrine. This hearb in the eating, doth help the paines of the head & lungs, & causeth good hearing, and sharpneth the wit & memory, & putteth away giddines: also it comforteth the brain and sight, not only by eating, but also by annointing the eies therwith. And when the iuce of the hearb cannot be had, then may you vse the pouder, or the hearb it selfe dryed, and steiped in water, & so wash the eyes therwith. And the iuce dropped in the eyes, doth help the blood shotten in them: and the hearb stayeth the bleeding at the nose and mouth, if it be applyed to either place. And the pouder of the hearb mixed with honye and eaten, doth cause the person easilier to spit forth fleame & grosse humors, and it helpeth a weake stomacke, and causeth an appetite to meate, and softneth the hart: also it consumeth euill blood & ingendreth good. And the hearb boyled in wine, and drunk, doth cause the person to sweat, but being boyled in water, & drunk, doth consume the euill humours and preserue the good. Further, this hearb eaten, doth strengthen the palsie members, and healeth the blistred lungs. And the hearb boyled or drunk rawe with wine, doth breake the stone. And the hearb boyled in the vrine of a healthfull man Childe, and drunke, doth helpe the dropsie and plague, and breaketh all impostumes, and maistreth the canker, and falling sicknes. And the pouder of this hearbe drunke, vnto the quantity of a dram, before twelue houres be past of the disease felt, doth both expell and heale the plague. And the downe, comming of the floures, laid on

cuts

cuts and new wounds, doth heale them without paine. And the hearbe chawed in the mouth, doth cure the ſtinke of the breath. And the hearbe boyled in wine, and drunke hot, about a quarter of an houre before the comming of an Ague, and the patient afterward well couered with cloathes in the bed, doth helpe all Agues, both hot and colde: and the pouder of the hearb drunke with hot wine and the diſtilled water, recouer the patient in ſhort time. And againſt any poyſon receiued by the mouth, when the ſame hapneth, drinke the pouder and hearbe, or the iuice of the hearbe, or the diſtilled water, and after couered with cloathes, ſweat wel for the ſpace of three houres. Laſtly, the pouder of the hearbe, either eaten or drunk, doth help the ſtitch of the ſide. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the hearbe named the bleſſed Thiſtle.

Of the ordering, and care of the hearbe Wormewood.
Cap. 47.

VVormewood is an hearbe ſo well knowen throughout England, that it nedeth the ſmaller inſtruction of the forme of it: yet be their three kinds of wormewood, deſcribed both of Plinie and Dioſcorides. And the firſt is the Romaine Wormwood, which alſo of the Countrie is named Ponticke, in which the beſt groweth: and the leaues of the ſame the ancient Phiſitions vſed to miniſter in figs to Children, to abate the bitternes thereof. And the ſecond is the Sea Wormwood, which alſo is named Sephinum, the ſeeds of which the Phiſitions appoint to the killing of wormes in the bodie, and of this they name them (at this day) the ſeeds againſt the wormes, or wormeſeede. And the third is that which is named Santonicum, growing in Fraunce, beyond the Alpes. And this although it be leſſe then the others, yet it is far gentler in the bitternes: and the ſame wormewood alſo at this day, is ſowen in beds in many gardens, and the yong leaues alſo mixed in Sallets, vnto the great commodity of the ſtomacke and liuer: and the wormewood ought to be gathered in the month of July, at what time the ſeeds apear, and to be dried in the ſhadow.

The Phisicke helps

The Wormewood is hot in the first degree, and drie in the third, astringent, and endued together with a bitter and sharpe qualitie, and the iuice of the hearbe is muche hotter. Now the iuice being drunke for ten daies together, vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, and tempered with Sugar, doth helpe the Iaundize, the water betweene the skin, and driueth forth many noysome humors of the Liuer and milt. And the wormewood doth comfort both the stomack, and mooueth an appetite vnto meat, and helpeth also those diseases proceeding of a stopping, like as the dropsie, and such like diseases: and it killeth the wormes in the belly, and doth mightilie expell them, by wearing a plaister prepared after this manner: First take foure ounces of wormewood, halfe an ounce of *Euphobium*, one ounce of the Harts horn burnt, and to these mixe an ounce of a Hare gaule, and hony, which prepare in plaister-forme, and apply vnto the belly. And he which is sicke of an Ague a long time, let him drinke the iuice of V Wormewood tempered with Sugar, which dooth helpe the Ague in short time after. And if any be so pained with the head-ache, that hee cannot sleepe nor rest, let him cause wormewood to bee finely bruised and boyled well in water, and put after into a fine linnen cloath, apply the same gently about the head, and it will both remoue the beating paines, and cause the patient to sleepe soundly: and boiled in wine, and drunke each day vnto the quantity of four ounces at a time, doth preserue the person, that the bloud putrifieth not in the bodie. And the Oile of wormewood dropped in the eares, doth restore the hearing. And wormewood boiled in vinegar, dooth amend the euill sauour of the mouth, if it be washed therewith: and the drinking thereof dooth put away the swellings of the milt. And wormewood boiled in oyle Oliue, and annointed about the breast, doth both helpe the weakenes of the stomacke, and the mallice of the Liuer. And the iuice of wormewood, boyled with the iuice of Borage, and the floures of Centurie, in Goats whay, and drunke doth helpe those diseased of the Ague, and griefs of the milt.

And

And wormewood sodden in Lie, with Sothernwood, dooth helpe the sheading of the haire. Item for rawnes of the stomack, take wormwood, and hearb grace, of ech a like waight, and to these mixe a litle pepper, beating them together, and boiling them in wine, drinke of the same, which doth greatly comfort the stomacke, and purgeth it. And wormewood laid among clothes, doth driue away moths. Also the often smelling vnto wormewood, procureth sleepe, or laying the same vnder the bolster, the party not knowing thereof. These hitherto of the properties of wormewood.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Sothernwood. Cap. 48.

Of the sothernwood be two kinds, as Pliny and Dioscorides write, the one growing on the plaine, the other on the mountaine: and so the one is taken to be the female, and the other the male: both hauing a bitternes like to the wormwood. And now the female (after Dioscorides) shooteth vp in stalke like a kind of tree, and for that named of many, the little Cipresse tree, bearing little white leaues about the small bowes or branches, & those finely parted, like the sea wormewood, and hauing big yellow beries in the top, whose sauor yeeldeth somwhat vnpleasant and bitter in tast. And the male beareth not so white leaues, being branched with a smal sed and leafe like to the fenel, shorter of groth, bearing in the top a yellowish flour, and hauing the like berries, hanging thick together on the top, and sauoring somwhat strong, and with one rot growing nere in the earth. And neither of them can abide the long cold of the winter, but that it withereth, and is much harmed also by the long heat of the Sun, when the same spreadeth it selfe in the top. And Theophrastus writeth that it better prospereth, being set with the rot, or in braunches slipped off, than sowen in the sed.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Sothernwood is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second: but *Aegineta* writeth, that it heateth & drieth in the third degree, and hath the vertue of digesting, and cutting asunder although it doth a little bind. And now the Sothernwood burned and brought to pouder, & tempred with the

Oyle

Oyle of Raddishe, and with the same annointing the balde place of the head, do cause the hair to grow: and the iuice of the hearbe mixed with the oyle of Dil, doth the like: in causing haire to grow in any place of the body. And the same hearbe doth resolue impostumes and flegmaticke humours, being boiled in a pot with the kernels of Quinces, and so applied. And the iuice presſed out of the Sothernwood, and drunke with wine, dooth defend the person from the Apoplexie. The iuice annointed on palsie members, dooth helpe them. And the Sothernwood boyled with oyle Oliue, and annointing the head therewith, doth take away the vntemperate coldnes of the head. The hearbe boyled with parcely and sugar, and drunke, dooth both breake and expell the stone of the kidneis, and bladder. And the oile of Sothernewood annointed beneath the nauill, doth cause vrine: and the hearbe drunke in wine, helpeth against poysons, and against the biting of venomous beasts or wormes. And if any often drinke of the root of this hearbe, it killeth the wormes in the body: also if the iuice be mixed with a litle milk, and drunk: it doth the like. Against the colde griefes of the Lungs, and breast, this hearbe is profitablie giuen, being sodden before with Isope in wine and water, and sweetned both with Licoras and Sugar. And the hearbe bruised with oyle & salt togeather, and laid on the Pulses of the hand, is a profitable remedie against the Ague. And a branch of the hearbe (as *Plinie* writeth) laid vnder the bolster, doth mooue the desire to the veneriall act. It doth also greatly auaile against all bewitchings, which by eating therof is hindered. These hitherto of the properties of the Sothernwood.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the hearbe Sage. Cap. 49.

THe hearbe Sage is so common, that the same is growing in euery Garden, and is either sowen in the seedes, or set in small slippes broken off, and weathed at the end, in the moneth of October, Nouember, Februarie and March, in well laboured and dressed ground, and desireth also to bee couered about with Bucke ashes, for so it prospereth, and com-

commeth the faster forward, and ioyeth besides in a sunnie and open place, although it may wel abide the colde of al the winter through, without any couer or defence ouer it.

And it ioyeth to be set by the hearb Rue or hearbgrace, and not in dunged earth, but in colde earth, mired with claye.

The Phisick helpes.

Sage healeth in the first degree, and drieth in the second, and the leaues (for the vse of medicine) may well be kepte for a yeare. And now the Sage being sodden in wine, and drunke, doth stay the excessiue flixes: and the tearmes staying, it draweth them downe, but to much running, it staieth them. And the Sage sodden with Wormewood, and then drunke, doth staye the bloudy flixe: and the leaues and stalkes sodden togither and drunk, doth prouoke vrine and the termes. And the Sage sodden in wine, and either drunke or applyed plaisterwise, doth helpe the palsie: and sod in water helpeth the gout & falling sicknes, and especially the dropping of the vrine: and being drunk, and applyed plaisterwise to the belly, & a fomentation applyed with the licour of the decoction of the hearb, doth help the strangury and bloudie flixe, and clenseth the matrice. And the Sage boyled in wine with the hearb named *Taxus Barbatus*, and sitting ouer the hot broth of the same decoction on a close stoole, doth so send vp the fundament falne down. The iuce of Sage mixed with honye, and washing filthy wounds therwith, doth so cleanse them. And the leaues and stalkes sodden in wine & washing with the same, doth helpe the itch of the priuities: and sitting ouer the hot broth of the decoction of the hearb doth take away the itch about the fundament. And the Sage water (distilled at the time of bearing the floures) drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitye of two or three ounces at a time, doth amend the defaults of the Liuer, putteth away the cough, and sendeth foorth the dead yongling. And this water doth greatly helpe shrunke and astonished members, if they be bathed therwith. This water drunke, doth helpe the paynes of the sides, the shaking of the hands, and the palsie, and the like, if they be bathed with the water.

And the water drunke with wine, doth procure an appetite to meat, and strengtheneth the stomacke, and womens places. And the same water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three or four ounces at a time, doth break any inward impostume, comforteth the braine, and taketh away the distillings of the head, comforteth a hot liuer, and putteth away frenzines. And the water of Sage, with Peacoks dung, doth stay the fresh bleeding wound, being bound about with mosse or cotten. These hitherto of the properties of the hearbe Sage.

Of the ordering and care of the Purselaine. Cap. 50.

Purselaine may be sowen in any time and season in a maner: yet the same soner springeth vp, when the warm season beginneth, as in the months of April, May, & June. And the seeds may either be sown alone in earth well mixed with pouder dust, or among other hearbs, if you will, for they will prosper and come vp, by growing among Onions and leeks. Also they desire to be sown in a fat ground, for by that means they grow & ware the bigger. And where the seeds shall once bee sowen, there will they euery yeare after come vp of their own accord, especially being suffered to grow to a big turffe & ripenes. The Purselaine is much harmed by a long drought vnlesse it bee otherwise holpen with the often watering in that season. And note, that the Purselaine growing vnder the shadow of trees, will come to no turffes.

The Phisicke helpes.

Purselaine is cold in the third degree, and moist in the second, and the fresh and greene more allowed than the drie, which hath then little vertue. And now the eating of the greene Purselaine doth helpe a hot stomacke, and the swelling of the mouth of the stomacke. And the Purselaine boyled & holden in the mouth, doth cease the paine of the teeth. And a plaister made of Purselane, & laid on hot vlcers, where it is found that the matter in them putrifieth, doth helpe the same, and the like: if the impostume shall be hot, and that it wandreth from one member to another. And the Purslaine taketh away the vlcers of the head, if the same be brused and tempe-

tempered with wine, and the head washed therewith. And the often eating of it rawe, doth fill the stomacke with clammie humors, but eaten rawe with vineger, doth put away the burning ague. And brused with barly meale, and after applyed hot to the stomacke, doth quallifie the heate thereof. And the eating of Purslaine doth soone staye the monthly courses without harme. And the Purslaine brused and mixed with barly flowre, and the same laid plaisterwise doth cease the paines of the head, quallifieth the heate of the eyes, stayeth the flixe of the belly, and especially the bloudy scouring, and strengthneth besides the raines and bladder. And the iuce drunk, doth help the burning ague, killeth the wormes in the belly and helpeth the spitting of blood in the body. And against the costiuenes of the belly, seeth the hearb in water with prunes, and the same eate togither, and after drinke the water. And *Auicen* writeth, that the Purslaine dryeth vp wartes of propertie, if they be annoynted with the iuce therof. And the hearb brused and laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the holly fire. And the hearb holden vnder the tongue, doth put away thirst. These hitherto of the properties of Purslaine.

Of the ordring, and care of the Penny-royall. Chap 51.

PEnny-royall is an hearb well known to all persons, and ioyeth in the growing with Mep and Pints: but the female worketh the greater effect (as Pliny writeth) **and beareth a purple floure, but the male a white floure. And now** Palladius **willeth the Penny-royall be set in the beginning of March, in earth well laboured and dressed, without any dung at all, and rather in a moist place where it most ioyeth.**

The Phisicke helpes.

The Penny-royall is hot and drye in the third degre, and doth also heat & decoct mightely, so that it maketh the person eating and drinking therof, the easier to cast & spit forth the clammie matter from the lungs and brest. And Penny-royall is then to be gathered, when it beareth the floures, for that they may after be kept for two yeares. And against the itch of the body, boyle the Penny-royall in faire water,

and washing the itching places therewith, it doth speedilye heale them. And sodden in wine and drunke, it doth sende downe the monthly courses, and the like the after burden: also being brused with honye and salt, and that laid plaisterwise, doth helpe the palsie and broken members. And the Penny-royall brused and eaten with honye, doth helpe the hardnes of fetching the breath. And against the gripings of the bowelles, take two partes of wine and a third part of the hearb boyled togither, and so drinke the same. And he that is daylye moued to much sleepe, let him take the fresh Penny-royall, and holde the same vnder the tongue and in the mouth, and thus often vsing the fresh hearb, shall so driue away desire of sleepe. And the pouder of the Penny-royall drunke in wine for two daies togither at night going to bed, doth helpe the griefe of the Liuer and lunges. And the pouder of the hearbes or seedes taken in an egge, doth help the rawnes of the stomacke and the casting of it. And if any by ouer much bleeding is bereft of minde: let this hearb be applyed with vineger to the nosthrils, and it will both refresh and restore the person, And the teeth rubbed with the pouder of this hearb, doth put away the griefe and paine of them And the hearb brused and tempered with Saffron and annoynted, doth helpe the euill vlcers of the body, and especially those which arise about the nayles of the fingers: and the hearb brused & applyed plaisterwise, doth asswage the swelling of the milte, and drunke warme in wine, doth help the dropping of the bladder: and the same wine with the hearb boyled in oyle, & applyed to the belly, doth worke the same effecte. And the Penny-royall sodden in wine, and applyed twice or thrice to the nosthrils, doth helpe the rume and distilling of the head. And the wine of the decoction of the hearb and drye figges drunk, doth help the colde cough, proceeding of clammie and watery humors. These hitherto of the properties of Penny-royall.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Artichocks. Cap. 52.

The Artechock groweth in the head like vnto the Pine-apple, which ought to be sowen or set in the earth in March.

March. Palladius willeth the earth before to bee well dunged and laboured, for that it best ioyeth in a fat ground. And the seeds set in fast ground, do greatly auaile against the casting vp of the Mole and other beasts, in that they cannot so easilie make holes in the ground. And Palladius also willeth, that when your beds be thus dressed and prepared in a readinesse, that then to set the seeds in the earth half a foot asunder, and this especially ought to be done in the increase of the Moone: and that holding the seeds with three of your fingers, you set them so deepe in the earth, (as vnto the first ioyntes) and couer them lightly with earth, and water them often, if a hot season insue, for by that meanes they send forth both tenderer and fuller fruits, as Varro writeth. And when the young plants be somewhat sprung vp, then ought they dayly to bee weeded, and their withered leaues plucked away, and to bee well dunged about with store of ashes, after the minde of Columella: for that the same kinde of dung (as hee writeth) is aptest, and best agreeth to this hearbe. And beware you set not the seeds turned vpside downe in the earth, for on such wise they will send forth sable, crooked, and verie smal Artichocks, as writeth Palladius. And the Artichockes will grow without prickles, if that the sharpe endes be pressed down or made blunt by rubbing them on a stone, before the setting in the erth. And certain writers affirm, that if the vpper skin of the rot of the Lettuce be pared off, and that the rot afterward be shred into very small peces, and that into ech pece cut a seed be put, and so couered in the earth, of such a depth aboue said, which after will grow without prickles: and they wil grow swet and pleasant, if that the seeds (three daies before) be steeped in any swet smelling licour, and after the drying in the aire, set so deepe in the earth as aboue is said. For by that meanes they send forth Artichockes of the same tast (which the licour was) in which the seeds were soked: and thus they will sauour and tast of the Baies, if that you steepe the seeds with Bay leaues, or put of the seeds into Bay berries, and set them into the ground. And a practise may bee vsed (if you will) in the ordering on such wise all o-

ther séeds. And to make Artichocks also grow swéet in tast, infuse the séeds before, in either milke, with hony, or in water with sugar, or els in pleasant wine, and after the drying, set them orderly in earth: and many do couer the leaues well with earth in the beginning of winter, to cause them to turn white, and to take away their bitternes, the better to serue with meates in the winter time. And Palladius affirmeth of experience, that the yong plants of the artichocks set among yong wheat in the end of October, to grow vp with the same will the better prosper, then by the setting of them in beds alone. And certaine ancient men will, that the whole plants be plucked vp, with the endes of the rots left in the earth, or cut of in the ends with some sharpe hook. and that those rots so cut or broken off, be dipped in dung, and set again in earth well laboured and dressed with old dung, a thræ foot asunder for the better increase of the plants. And if néed so require, for the heat of the season, then to water the plants. vntil they haue sufficiently taken root in the ground. And the artichoks are not to be gathered altogither, for that they ripe not al at one time, but ripen alwaies the one after the other. And they also are then to be gathered, when they haue as yet flours in the nether part, round about like vnto a Garland, and not when all the flours be fallen off, for then they be worser. And euery yær the yong plants ought daily to be plucked vp from the old, for feare of hindring the yæld of the old, and the yong new set in other places further asunder. And there be some Authours which will, that the yong plants bee plucked vp, with some part of the rot. And those plants which you preserue for séeds, ought first to be clensed from all the yong ones growing about, & couered ouer with some potshard or barke, for that the séeds through the burning of the sun, and shours of the raine corrupting, doe vtterly perish and come to nothing. And the Mice and Rats do greatly couet to féed on the rots of the artichockes, and if they once tast of the roots, or otherwise be moued to come vnto them, then gather they after in great companies vnto the place, and that comming a great way of, so much do they delight in the sauour and taste

of

of those rootes. Wherefore to auoid the resort and comming of them vnto the roots, then take (as Varro willeth) either swines dung, lapping the same about the roots, or els figge ashes, strawing them in like sort about the roots, which so will driue them away.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Artichock eaten raw, doth amend the sauour of the mouth, and the prickle partes like to the Pine aple kernels, sodden tender, and boiled after with butter and vinegar, and seasoned with salt, be greatly commended: and some delight in eating of them raw, and find a pleasantnesse in the eating, if they be prepared with pepper, salt, and the fine pouder of Coliander seedes strawed vpon. And stieped in wine, or rather sodden in wine, and eaten, doth not only moue or cause vrine, but procure the veneriall act. And the same sodden in water and eaten, doth strengthen the stomacke, and procure a more earnest desire both of man & woman, by eating both at one time of the same. And *Galen* affirmeth, the Artichok to bee then hard of digestion, and hurtfull to the stomacke, when the same is growen vnto the sheading quite of all the floures of the head, although some write when it commeth to the bearing of floures, at what time the riper ones (as they write) doe not onely waxe drie of moisture, but hard and rough of skin, and also haue more plentie of the chollericke iuice: and of this they are rather to be sodden then raw, and yet the yong ones being full of iuice, may safely be eaten raw being prepared in the like order as aboue is taught. These hitherto of the properties of the Artichocks.

Of the ordering, eare, and secrets of Leekes. Cap. 53.

Leekes ought to be sowen in a battle ground, and especially in a plaine low place, as writeth Palladius, and that the beds bee leuell, high cast vp, well laboured, and orderlie dunged. And the vnset Leekes after two moneths sowing, ought to be cut as they grow, for so (as Columella writeth) they wax the bigger and continue the longer. And the better also they wil prosper, if after euery remouing, and setting againe, the blades bee cut: and how often they be cut, so often

ten to be watered and dunged. And this also learne, that the bigger the heads grow, so much the further distant, as commonly foure fingers asunder they ought to bee set, and after the growing, the blades thē to be cut: also the often watring dunging, plucking vp the wæds growing neere to them, and the often remouing, do greatly further their increase. And when you mind to haue the heads of the Lækes grow bigge, then before the setting againe, cut away all the small berrie roots, & vnder the heads lay either pot-shards, or oyster shels, betwæne the heads and the earth, and after couer each head so ordered with earth, & by that means the heads will grow the bigger, so that you do not then water thē, after the mind (of the Græke) Sotion. And Palladius writeth of Lækes on this wise, that when the læks be grown a finger bignes, and that the blades be halfe cut away, that then ye set the heads againe in new and soft cow dung, foure fingers asunder each from other. And when the Leeks haue gotten some strength of rote in the earth, then with your forked dibble, put vnder the head, lose it so in the earth, that the head may so seme to hang in the earth, and the head by that meanes finding such large emptines vnder it, will after growe out, and fill that emptinesse.

And further, if you desire only to haue vnset Lækes, then sow your sædes thicker together: but if big in the head, then sow your sæds the thinner, and daily in a maner weed them, and fæd them with soft cow dung. And the sæds also may be sowen in the moneths of March, Aprill, May, and all June: But remoued and set againe (after the mind of Palladius) in the moneth of July, August, September, and October, will well serue the moneths of March and Aprill following, being as aboue said new dunged in the setting, and watered. And both the Greeke Sotion, Columella, and Palladius do write: that if many seeds of the Lækes be tied vp together, and set in prepared earth, and son after watered, then will all the sæds in an heape together grow vp into one marueilous big læk, right wondrous to behold. And this practise may bee tried by the seedes of any other plant. And like vnto the aboue-said

may

may be caused, if that into the head of a Lèk you put a rape-sæde (the hole before being boared with a wodden pricke, for that killeth the head) and then set orderly, as is aboue said, doth growe into a meruailous bignes, as writeth the afore-said Palladius. Collumella writeth, that the head of a Lèk boared with the pointe of a wodden pricke or stiffe Reede, or els by any other meanes, a hole opened with yron, and putting into the same hole a Gourd seede, in the stead of Rape-seed taught before, and ordring of the lèk (as is aboue said) will after growe into a meruailous bignes.

And there is yet an other way taught of certaine others, which is, that so many seedes be put into a thin Reede, as a man may aptely take vp with three of his fingers, and them set orderly into the ground, and of these seeds togither will proceed the like big plant, as is aboue said. And Collumella willeth that after the sowing your seedes, and that couered with earth, to tread the earth close vpon them with the fot, and to doe no other worke vnto them, vntill three dayes be past, and in the fourth day, to sprinckle your sædes with water, vnlesse they be in the meane time watered with Raine, for by that meanes (saith he) they will sauour much better: and when in sowing or planting you mixe sand vp the earth, then will the Leeks growe and yeilde the plentifuller. And to take away the strong breath and smell of eating of Lèks chawe then Cummine in thy mouth, and the same will take away the strong smell, although you had eaten a large handfull of the Lèks at one time. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the seedes of Lèks poured into wine, do not suffer the wine after to sower: but yet they restore vineger vnto the naturall taste and smell of wine, taking away by that meanes all the tartenes and sharpnes therof. And Nero Cæsar so greatly commendeth vnset Lèks, that eating them euery day with oyle, will after cause a clear voyce to sing, either priuately or publikely. And last, this by experience is found, that the Lèk commeth vp after the eighténe day sowing, and groweth vnto two yeares end, and after that falleth to seeding, and so dyeth.

The Phisicke helpes

The Leeke of the Garden dryeth in the second degree, and heateth in the third, and the seedes may well bee kept three yeares. The Leeke bruised and mixed with salt, and that laid on euil pushes, doth heale them: and being brought vnto pouder, and tempered with oyle of Roses and vinegar, and dropped into the eares, doth put away the pains of them: and the selfe same taken, doth helpe the Tooth-ach: but the Garden Leeke by often eating, dooth harme both the stomacke and eies: and much more the wilde Leeke. The often eating of the Leeke doth fill the bodie with winde, and therefore it ought twice to bee sodden in water, before the eating with meat, and so the malice of it is qualified. And the Leeke also draweth downe the tearmes, causeth vrine, and procureth a superfluous heat. The iuice of the Leeke drunke with womans milke, doth helpe an olde cough, and the blisters of the lungs: and the same drunke, doth helpe the spitting of bloud. And for the casting or vomiting vppe of olde bruised bloud, take two drammes of the iuice of the Leeke, with the like quantitie of fine pouder of the gaule, and Olybanum, mixing them together, which after drink, & it doth greatly helpe: and the same mixture applied vnto the nosethrils, dooth stay the bleeding of the nose. And eating the Leeke rawe, dooth cause vomiting, and is contagious, yet the same putteh away drunkennes. And a plaister made of the Leeke with hony, and that laid on broken and spoyled members, dooth aswage the swelling, and consume the clottred bloud. And against the paines of the hips, drinke the iuice of the Leeke, and it will ease the same. And the iuice doth especially heale such wounds which be cold and putrified, if the same bee poured into them, and eateth away rotted flesh of the wounds. And the iuice mixed with the rootes of white Lillies, and annointed on the hips, doth put away the pain of them. And the often eating of the Leek, doth cause the head ache, burdeneth the stomacke, causeth thirst, and inflameth the bloud: and the iuice mixt with salt, and that laid on fresh wounds, doth vnclose them. And the eating of the leek, procureth

cureth a desire to the veneriall act. And the iuce of the Leek drunk in wine, doth both help the old cough & the dropsie. And against the paines of the head, take two partes of the iuce, with a third part of honye, that drop either into the nosthrils or eares, and it will greatly help. And the vnset Leeks sodden in good white wine, with May butter, and that laide plaisterwise on the belly so hot as the patient may well abide it, & at the cooling of that, apply another hot plaister, & this do the third and fourth time togither if need require, which without dout will greatly ease the chollicke. And the water of the rootes distilled in Iune, drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitye of two ounces at a time, do greatly help such as spit blood, and also helpeth barraine women by often drinking thereof, and the water stayeth the greate bleeding at the nose, if fine cotten be dipped in water and put vp into the nosthrils. And the same water drunk, doth help the costiue belly & the paine of the hips, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, causeth vrine, and sendeth forth the stone. And the water speedily helpeth wounds, if they be washed morning and euening with it. And the same water doth greatly help vnto the exvlceration and fracture of womens priuye places, which sometimes hapneth after the birth of big children, if they be bathed or washed with the same water morning & euening. These hitherto of the properties of Leeks.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garden Onyon. Cap. 54.

The Onion through the bigneſſe of the head, and number of cartilages, with the which the bodie is included was of the auncient Husband-men so named. And now, as touching the condition of the ground and manner of sowing the seeds, you shall vnderstand that the same ought to be done in a fat ground, laborously digged vp, dunged and watered, and the earth also neare red, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. **Also the ground where you mind to sowe your seedes, ought to be cast vp, and lye open all the winter through, that it may so be nipped and bitten of the frost, and the weeds killed and after that to be dunged & the earth cast leuell into beds,**

in which doing, plucke vp and cast away all manner of wéedes and roots that you can finde. And when you haue thus handled and ordred your earth, then in the Month of March in a calme and faire day, the winde blowing out of the south or Easte, sowe orderly your seedes, with the seed of the herb Sauery among them, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Pliny. And when they come vp, you must diligently weede them for three or foure dayes togither: and as Palladius willeth, your beds ought to be thrice digged vp finely, and plaine raked ouer before the sowing of the sæds. And now after the yong plants be sprung vp, and that you would haue your Onyons to growe bigge in the heads, and not to beare seeds, then must you breake off the greene blades, that the iuce may so goe to the rotes, or els breake off, and cut away both the blades and small hairie rotes, before the setting againe in the earth, for so they will grow the bigger in the heads, as writeth the Græke Sotion. And this learne, that the sæds sowen in the wane of the mone, come vp both small and slower: but those sæds sowen in the increase of the mone, spring vp the bigger and swéter. This also is not to be ouerpassed, that in all kindes of Onyons, the longer in fashion is sower then the round, and the reddest sower then the white: and the drye then the greene: and the rawe then the sodden. And farre bigger will the heads be, if after their remouinge they be sette againe into beds lying open for twentye dayes before, and that well turned in with dunge, and so longe dryed, vntill the moysture be almost spent, after the minde of the learned Sotion. And some plucke off the vpper skinne, leauing them bare, and so setting them againe in the earth: And thus setting them again, they ought to be placed a hand breadth and somewhat more a sunder, that they may the better prosper. And those which you mind to eate before the full spenes, ought to be set in beds, where Cucumbers or Gourdes, and Mellons be, and in their growing to be often digged about, watered and wéded, for so they prosper the better, as writeth Palladius.

And when they bee growen and shotte vp in to high stems,

stems, then must their weake bodies be staied vp with small props, least their long small neckes bent much downe-ward with blasts of winde, and the heades also often knocking or beating together through blowing of the windes, should so shake forth and leese much seed. And the time also of gathering the heads, as Columella and Palladius teach, when the seedes appeare blacke of colour. And further, Sotion the Greek writeth, that the Onions will last a long time, if that before their laying or hanging vp, they bee laide or put for a season in warme warer: or els, as Pliny willeth, to be infused in warme and salty water for a season, and after laid to drie in the Sunne vntill they bee through drie, and then couered with Barley straw: and in such wise they ought to bee laid in the straw, that the one not to touch the other. And some hang them in the smoke and Chimney, neare vnto the heate of the fire, and doe likewise continue a long time. And to make Onions grow of a maruelous bignes in the beds, close the seedes of them with the seedes of the Gourd in the best dung, and mixe the earth diligentlie with them in the putting into the earth. And you may cause them also to growe of the same bignesse, if that raising vp the earth about them, you doe lose the earth hollow vnder the heades, as before is taught of the ordering of Leeks. Also you may cause the like heads, if boring certaine holes, you put into them some seeds of the Gourd, setting them so into the earth. And there be also husband-men, which will the seedes of the Onion to bee then gathered, when as the pillings of the head be halfe drie, and that they be after throughly dried in the Sun. And here learne, that certaine ancient writers (as Plinie and others) will, that both the Onions and Garlike should be sowen neer to sweet smelling floures, to cause them saucur and smel the sweeter. And those Onions which you mind to plucke vp, to keep a long time, ought to be done in the waining or decrease of the Moone.

And further learne, that Palladius willeth the young Onions to be set againe in Februarie, but sowen in the seedes, both in the spring and Haruest. And yet many ancient hus-

band-men willeth, that the seeds be sowen in the monethes of December, Januarie, Februarie, and March, either alone, or in beds with other herbes, and after they be somewhat come vppe, then to be remooued and thinner set, as a span asunder: and if the earth in the same yeare shall not be dunged, then the sowing time following it ought to be dunged for the better increase, and plentifuller growing. And those Onions be counted best, which be set in the moneth of August, for that in the yeer following, they may so send forth their seedes: and those be counted worst, which be set greene in the Lent time. And to conclude, those Onions be thought to keepe the better and longer time, which bee gathered and plucked vppe in the increase of the Moone, and beeing then a calme and cleare day, and after laide to drie in a shadowie place. And the Seedes may well be kept for the space of one whole yeare.

The Phisick helps.

Onions bee hot and moyst in the third degree, and heate also in the fourth degree, as witnesseth *Galen*. And the often eating of the raw Onions, doth cause a rough throat, winde in the stomacke, and the head-ache. And the Onion mixed with honie, dooth take away the griefe of an euill stomacke: and yet the eating of them doth harm the members, for that they drie ouer-much the moisture of the bodie: but tempered with vinegar, and laid on piles, they do then open them. And the eating of them, dooth soften the bellie, and causeth thirst. And the iuice of the Onion, mixed with honie, doth amend the sight, and the pinne and the webbe, if the same be often dropped into the eies. And against paines of the brest, take the Onions rosted vnder imbers, and eat them morning and euening, which by that meanes causeth easie spitting vppe of humours, and looseth the breast: and in the same manner it putteth away swelling, and purgeth the stomacke. And the Onion bruised, and mixed with salt and honie, and that laid on warts, doth make them fall of by the rootes. And the Onions bruised with vinegar, if a scabbed skin be washed with the same, do heale and make the skinne faire.

faire. And the eating of them raw, doth cause loathsomnes vnto the stomacke, and yeeldeth a strong sauour out of the mouth. And the iuice of it drawne vp into the nosethrils, doth purge the head. And against the biting of a mad dog, take the iuice of the Onion, with the iuice of Rew, or hearb-Grace, and honie, and with the same annoint the place. And the often eating of Onions, dooth harme the chollericke, for that they cause them to be both hotter and drier: but the flegmatick persons the Onions seldome harme, for that they cut asunder, and consume the superfluous humours in them. And the iuice of the Onion, mixed with Capons grease, and annointed on raw heeles, or sleepie gaules, doth soone heale them. And the iuice dropped into mattery and running eares, and after seething them in salte broath with other good spices, is then profitable to the stomacke, and cause a better nourishment. And the Onion bruised with honnie, and that laid piaister-wise on any wounds, doth heale them. And the yong tender Onions eaten with hony, do maintain health. And the Onion rosted in the hot embers, and eaten with oyle, doth helpe the cough. And the iuice mixed with womans milke, and dropped into the eares, dooth helpe the paine and noise of them. And the iuice of the Onion drunk with the iuice of Fenell, doth helpe the dropsie, and beeing drunke with Rew, and honie, doth greatly helpe the heauy sleepines and forgetfulnes. And the iuice also mixt with raisons and figs, and that laid plaster-wise on impostumes, doth both breake and draw them. And the eating of the Onion doth cause fearefull dreames, especially to such lately cropen out of a sicknes. And lastly, the Onion accustomed to be eaten morningly, and that yong and tender, both of labouring and husband men, doth greatly maintaine their health, and preuaileth the like to them against the infection of the aire, by eating them with salt and bread, for so they lesse harm the head. These hitherto of the properties of Onions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Garlike. Cap. 55.

THe lesser Garlike must bee sowen or set in the ridges of beddes in the Moneth of September, and Nouember, and

and raised somewhat high, that it may the lesse bee harmed with Wintrie Waters. And therefore you shal make sundry little furrowes in your beds, like to such which bee commonlie made in the fields, to auoyd the moisture and raine. And set the Cloues (plucked of from the heads) foure fingers asunder, and not deeper than the middle ioynt, that they may the better come vp. And when three leaues are sprong vp, then weed about them: for the oftner you do weed them, the bigger they wil ware in the heads. And if you wil haue them big in the heads, then tread thē flat down, after ỹ fastning & tying together of the greene blades, which you must do, when as the blades be somwhat come vp, and not grown vnto a stalke, that so the iuice may returne to the heads. And Palladius willeth, that Garlike bee sowen either in Januarie, or Nouember, in a white ground, wel digged and laboured, but not dunged, and in a warm day, and that the earth be then indifferent dry: for by that means wil the seeds prosper the better, and come forward. And yet Plinie writeth, that the seedes sowen doe slenderly come vp: for that in the first yeares grouth, they bee no bigger than the Leekes in the heads: and in the second yeare they come deuided: but in the third yeare, the heads be growen to perfect bignesse. And further, there be certaine others which wil, that the seeds of the Garlike be sowen in the monethes of September, October, Februarie, and March: and in hot countries in the moneth of December. And Palladius writeth, that if any happen to be left in the earth when they bee ripe, then those remaining doe after renue both in the rotes and leaues, and send forth their stædes in the yeare following, which may bee sowen and bring forth Garlike. And besides, Palladius willeth, that when the Cloues bee thus set on the ridges of the beddes in white earth, well laboured and dressed without Dung, and that they be shot vp in stems, to tread the blades flat to the earth, and keeping them downe, that the blades shot not into an height, which by the often treading of them downe, will cause the iuice to returne vnto the Cloues, and make a mightie head. Moreouer, Plinie, Sotion the Græke,

Palladius,

Palladius, and diuers other ancient men do write, that if the Cloues of the Garlike be set in the earth when the Moone is vnder the earth, and the heades plucked vp when the like wise is set vnder the earth, that then the strength of the sauour of them will be so small, that the breath of the eaters of them shall scarcely be felt. And not vnlike to this doth Columella write, that if the cloues be set in the beds, ỹ moone being then vnder the earth, & the heads plucked vp at the change of the moone, that the sauor of them wilbe greatly abated. And the Greek Sotion writeth, that you may make the Garlik heads sauor swéter, if that you mixe the kernels of Oliues brused with the cloues and afterward set them togither in the earth or gently breaking flat the sharpe ends of the cloues, you set them so into the earth: or els in the setting, you mixe the Lées of the Oyle Oliue with the cloues of the Garlike. And Didimus writeth, that the strong sauour gotten by eating of Garlike, is put away by the onely eating of a grene Beane or two. And others write, that the rote of the Bétes, rosted vnder hot imbers, and eaten: doth put away the strong breath and smell of the Garlike. And likewise certaine late practitioners do write, that if the eaters of Garlike do after eate grene Parcely, that the same doth shortly after take away the loathsome smell thereof. And many of the auncient writers affirme, that the Garlike heads will continue the longer, and serue the better to vse, if that they be afterwardes either buryed or couered in Chaffe, or hanged vp in the smoake. Likewise, there be some which will, that the heads of Garlike be a little while steped in warme salt water, and after to be dryed and hanged vp or couered, which so dooth cause them to last the longer. But in this or that manner vsed, they become (after the setting) barraine of yeild for the most parte. And sufficient it is, that the Garlike heads be dryed ouer the fire, that they may not spring or growe afterward.

And Pliny writeth, that those heades of the Garlike be of a lower taste, which haue the most cloues: and he also affirmeth, that the Garlike heades will haue no stronger sauour

or smell after the sething, then the onions haue after their sething. And Palladius writeth, that the garlik heads ought then to be plucked vp, when the stalkes ware dry and feble: and this especially do in the waine of the Mone, & in a cleare day, and dry season. And Democritus in his husbandry writeth, that if you mind to driue the smal birds from the eating and spoiling of your fruits, and not to come nere them, then take garlike heads, and hang sundry on diuers branches of the trees.

The Phisick helpes.

Garlike is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and hath the vertue of consuming, dissoluing, and expelling poyson. And against the biting of any venemous beasts and wormes, take Garlike, brusing the same, and after apply the same plaister-wise on the bite: and this is named the husband mans triacle. And against wormes in the belly, take Garlike, with the iuice of Parcely and Mintes, which mixe with a litle vinegar and pepper, & making therof a sauce, vse to eat of the same with bread or meat. And for the chollicke and paines of the rains, seeth Garlike in wine and oile, which applying plaister wise on the belly, & round about the root of the yard, doth greatly helpe the same. And by eating of Garlike, a man may the safelier goe into a suspected aire, and by stinking places, because the strong sauor of it (for the season) doth put away all other noisome sauours and stinks. And a Garlike cloue holden in the mouth, dooth cease the paine and ach of a tooth, if the same proceed of a cold cause.

And *Syrapio* writeth a maruelous matter, that althoug the eating of garlike doth harme the whole and perfect sight of the eies, yet he affirmeth, that the moisture of it dooth comfort a dull sight. And here learne, that the Garlike hath certaine euill properties, which bee these: it maketh inflamation, drieth and harmeth the stomacke, and causeth thirst, and laid to the skin (in any place) it raiseth vp blisters, if it lieth twelue houres space, and therfore the often eating of it doth harme the collericke, in that the garlike doth inflame them, and drieth the whole body, especially in a hot season, and engen-

gendreth beside the leaprie in them, causeth also frenzinesse, hurteth the sight, and moueth the head-ache. And in consideration hereof, the collericke ought to take heed of the often eating of Garlike, and chiefly in the latter ende of the Spring, the sommer, and hot season of the harueſt, because it doth then sooner engender red choller, and increaseth a dust matter: also it doth more harme being eaten raw, than sodden or rosted. And yet the eating of Garlike moderatly in the winter time, is right profitable to the flegmatick persons. And further, garlike rosted vnder the hot imbers, and brused with figs and barrowes greace, and that applied plaister-wise, doth breake a cold impostume which is long ere it be ripe. And the garlik eaten putteth away the inward swelling of the body, and softneth and openeth impostumes (as abouesaid) and draweth foorth the matter, and the head annointed with the iuice of garlike, doth kil both the nits and lice. And the garlike drunk with the decoction of the Organy, doth also kil the nits and lice of the head. And the ashes of the garlike mixed with hony, and that annointed on thin places of the head, doth helpe the sheading of the haire: and the same annointment amendeth the foulenes or filthines of the skin. And the ashes of garlike doth help the vlcers open, by sprinkling them vpon: and the ashes of the garlik wroght togeather with hony and May butter, and annointed on the grieued places, doth make the skin smooth, if the same be either infected with the scab, or leapry, so that the annointing be done after bathing in an hot house. And as the most Authors do write, the often eating of garlike, doth greatly harm and dull the sight of the eies. And garlike sodden and eaten, doth cause a cleare voice, helpeth an old cough, purgeth the cold breſt, and drieth vp the moisture of the stomacke. And the garlike (with the leaues and all) soden in wine & drunk, doth not onely procure vrine, but moueth down the terms, and draweth downe also the after burden, if the belly be annointed with the same. And a smoake also made of garlike, may do the like, if the woman sit ouer it, on a close chaire for the purpose. And the sauour of the Garlike, dooth driue

away all venemous wormes. And if any being stinged of an adder, doe eate of the Garlike, he shall not after be harmed of the stinging, and is also a good remedie against poyson. And Garlike sodden with vineger, and drunke with that & honye mixed togither, named Mulle: doth after send forth the flat and broad wormes, and many other venemous wormes crept into the belly. And Garlike sodden with oyle Oliue, and annoynted, dooth asswage the swellings and other griefes of the bladder: and sodden with Centorie in wine, and drunke, doth help the dropsie gathered of a colde cause. And the Garlike brused with the Coliander seedes, and so taken in wine, doth asswage the paines of the ioyntes, and openeth the straightnes of making water. And Garlike sodden with Beanes, being brused & tempred with oyle Oliue, or oyle of Poppie, and an oyntment made of the same, with the which annoynting the temples, do greatly help the headache. And the Garlike sodden, and after rosted drye, with Pellitorie and Masticke, and brought to pouder, with which washing the mouth, doth greatly help the toothache. And if a woman dout of her being with childe, and smelleth not the sauour of the Garlike set by her bed side in the night, it dooth then vndoutedly declare that she is conceiued with childe. And the eating of Garlike is good & profitable both to husbandmen and labourers which often eate colde meats, and meates of hard digestion. These hitherto of the properties of Garlike.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets, of the great Garlike. Chap. 56.

THe greate Garlike, which some Authours name the Africa Garlike, and the Greekes Aphroscorodon, is far bigger of encrease, then our common Garlike. And nowe, this Garlike doth Columella will, to be set on the ridges of beds, like vnto the former Garlike, and that out of one head many Cloues to be broken off which ought to be done in a faire and calme day, in a white earth wel digged vp & dressed, without any dung, about the Calends of October & Nouember. And to make the heads of this Garlike to grow big, then order

order the Garlike blades that come vp, like as was taught of the other Garlike. And in the setting also of the cloues, remember to plant them, not only fourfingers asunder, but a finger deep, & to rake the earth often ouer them in the growing vp, whereby the iuice may run to the rot, and cause them to ware the bigger in the heads. And to conclude, all other instructions necessarilie to bee vnderstanded about the further ordering of this great Garlike, may be learned in other afore taught.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Radish. Cap. 57.

THe Radish root is well knowen both vnto the rich and poore, so that as well the husbandmen as the Cittizens doe (at this day) eate of the Raddish, the same before being well scraped, cutte into thinne round slices, and dipped in Water and Salt, the better procureth an appetite vnto meat.

And Columella willeth, that the seedes of the Radish bee sowen in a well dunged & laboured earth, and in the months of March, April, and September. And after the rot be grown vnto some bignesse, then couer it ouer thicke with earth, for otherwise, by leauing it bare, that the Sunne and aire may worke on the rot, doth so cause the same to become hard and hollow, as writeth Pliny, which willeth the Radish to be sowen in a lose and moist earth, without dunging. And Palladius writeth, that the Radish in no wise agreeth to be sown either in a sandy or grauelled ground: but hee affirmeth it to ioy vnder a temperate aire, and to bee sowen in beds, large asunder, & deepe digged after a new raine, vnlesse the ground be sufficiently moist and watry of it selfe. And when the seeds be sown, then ought they by and by after to be couered with fine earth, and no dung mingled nor cast vpon, but onely the chaffe of corne, although Columella, contrarie writeth. And Aristomachus willeth the leaues to be quite broken off, and pulled away in the winter, whereby the root may be the bigger in sommer. And the root also will bee the pleasanter in eating, if you breake off the leaues before it grow to a stalke as Plinie writeth. And the smaller the leafe shall be, so much

the swéter and pleasanter will the root be. And to bee also watered with salt water, it prospereth the better, as Plinie writeth: for that by the watering on this wise, the rot sendeth such bitternesse as then remaineth in the same. And to make your radish taste sweet, then after the mind of Florentine, steepe your séeds before, either in water and hony mixed togeather, or in the licour of Raisons, or els in water and Sugar for two daies together, and after the drying againe, sow them so in the earth. And to make your Radish growe big, plucke away all the leaues, sauing a small stalke remaining, and after couer the same very thicke ouer with earth, as Palladius willeth. And the like affirmeth Pliny, if that a hole be made with a wodden dibble, and the same filled fiue fingers high with the chaffe of corne, and after the séeds mixed with dung and fine earth, it will after cause so great a rot grow, as was the bigues of the hole made. And the thin sowing of the séeds in the end of July, and vnto the midle of August, or els a little after, and wéeding them often after their comming vp, doth so cause them to growe the bigger in the rot. And they also ioy in open aire, but bee much harmed by growing in shadowie places. And if such a drought doth happen, that you cannot aptly sow your séeds, then sow them the thicker together, in some moist and waterie place.

And when the yong plants be well sprung vp, and strong in the earth, & that the ground be well moistned with showers, then may you remoue the yong plants, especially about the end of August, and vnto the middle of September. And set them after in the earth, well laboured and trimmed, for so they grow the pleasanter in eating. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the rotes of the Radish dried, & those wrought into pouder, and after poured into a bigger glasse, or narrow mouthed pot glazed, ful of wine, and letting the same so stand couered for a few daies, wil after be turned into sharpe vineger, which drunke daily, doth marueilously wear away, and consumeth the stones of the kidneis, and helpeth besides many other griefes of the body.

The Radish is hot and drie in the third degree, but some write in the second degree. And now the Raddish eaten at supper, dooth digest the meat eaten, and heateth the stomacke, and causeth also a stinking breath, if any sleep by and by after the eating. And this roote is hurtfull vnto women with child, and therefore to be refrained in that season. And the iuice of the roote annointed on olde vlcers, dooth both cleanse and eat away the canker in them: and the same like worketh the pouder of the root. And the iuice of the radish boiled with hony, and mixed with a little vineger, and after strained and drunke, doth helpe the quartaine ague, and stoping of the milt. And the root of the radish laid plasterwise dooth helpe the water betweene the skin, and such diseased with the hardnes and swelling of the milt. And the iuice of the roote drunke with the licour of raisons, dooth helpe the kings euil: and drunk with honie, doth put away the cough: and this being also drunk, helpeth such which be stopped in the brest, and draw the wind short. And of this root is made an Oximel, on this wise: first bruse the root somewhat, and infuse them for two or three daies in vinegar, and after put to the same a third part of hony, which strained, drinke therof, for this helpeth the quartaine and one day ague, vnles the same proceed of salt fumes. And if there be colde and vndigested humours in the stomacke, then steepe the oindes of the roots of the Radish with Honie and vinegar mixt together, & of the same let the patient daily eat a good quantity and after the same so eaten, drinke a draught of warme water, putting then your finger, or a feather dipped in sallet oile into the throate, and this foorth-with will procure you to cast forth at any time, but the apteste time is in the morning.

And against the hardnesse of the Milt, and Liuer, seeth the hearbe alone in Oile and VVine, and apply the same plaisterwise, and the same plaister laide hot on the bottome of the bellie, neare to the root of the priuitie, dooth helpe the strangury. And the water of the Radish distilled in September, drunke morning & euening, vnto the quantity of three

or

or foure ounces at a time, doth help the stone, causeth vrine, and cleanseth also the raines, and the blader: It doth cleanse the places also where the stones containe. And the same water drunke, doth helpe the kings euill, killeth the wormes of the belly, and helpeth the digestion of the stomack, and purgeth it of all clammy humors, and other matters which hinder digestion, and it openeth also euerie stopping of the inner members and vains. And drunke in the quantity aboue said, doth extenuate the rough humours, and causeth a cleare voice, and this water gargelled in the throate, and holden in the mouth, doth helpe the swelling of the throat, and vlcers of the gums, for it both resolueth, breaketh, and consumeth. And this water drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, for three or foure weekes together, dooth helpe the water betweene the skin, if that the patient refraineth much and often drinking: for the lesse the patient then drinketh, the more he sendeth forth of the water in the vrine, and by that meanes is the sooner holpen. These hitherto of the properties of the Radishes.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Nauew. Cap. 58.

The Nauew well beareth any aire in a manner, and delighteth in a fat lose ground, but it better prospereth in a leane and drie grauelly ground. And the propertie of the place doth change the Nauew into a Rape, and the rape contrariwise into a Nauew. And that your Nauewes may wel prosper, sowe them in a well laboured and dunged ground. And they also wil come vp being sown in those places where the corne hath bene reaped of that same yeare. And if you see that they grow too thick, then remoue them, and set them thinner, whereby the other vnremooued, may grow the bigger in the rot: they ought to be sowen about the end of July, and in all the moneth through of August: and if they happen to lacke raine, then to water them so often as need shall require, and in the weeding about them, both the Nauew and Rape be much strengthened, and grow the better. And those Nauews be the better, which be long, and in a maner wrinkled, not bigge, and not hauing many roots, but one onelie

roote,

and that both sharpe and straight: and of the Nauewes be made a wholsome composition with the Radish, a little salt, vineger, honye, mustard, and swéete spices, and without spices also the same may be made pleasant to eate.

The Phisick helps.

Nauew is hot of qualitie in the second degree, & doth much nourish, but hardly digesteth, & maketh the flesh soft, & puffeth vp, yet lesse then the Rape, for the which cause, if the Nauewes be boyled in water, and that the first water be cast away, and in the boyling of the second water, the hardnes of the substance tempered, and so they ingender a meane nourishment betweene good & euil. And of this, such as are not well boyled do hardly digest, & cause windines & a stopping both of the vaines & poures. Therfore the Nauews are best to be eaten when as they haue bene sod in two waters, and in the third seething to bee boyled with the fat of Beefe or mutton. These hitherto of the properties of the Nauew.

Of the ordering, care and secrets, both of the Parsenep and yellowe Carret. Cap. 59.

THe garden Parsnep is well knowne to most persons, and is vsde in most places, which (as Rutilius writeth) being tenderly sod, nourisheth well the body. And now Palladius willeth Parsneps to be sowen in the séeds, or set in the rootes, in the monthes of December, January and March, in fat ground, déep digged, lose, and well turned vp, and orderly dressed. And the séeds also must be thin sowen, and likwise the rootes thin set, whereby they may growe the bigger. And after the comming vp, they must be wéeded aboute for the better increase also of the roote. And Pliny writeth, that there be many kindes of Carets, and this not of themselues but of the proper places where they growe so altered. And now the yellowe Carets (most sowen in gardens) ought to bee ordred in the sowing, like as we haue aboue taught in the vsage of the Parsneps, and they ought also to be sowen as well in Haruest as in the Spring time, and after they be come vp, then to bee remoued and set thinner, for so they prosper much the better, and ware longer in the rootes.

The Phisicke helpes.

The roote of the Parsnep is hot in the middle of the second degree, and moiste in the first degree, so that the same eaten doth greatly proffite the body. And now the root tenderly sodden and eaten, causeth vrine, & doth especially profite the melancholy. And the gardē Patsneps also eaten with meate, be profitable to the body, in that they ingender good blood, & the wilde Parsnep roots eaten of women, do moue the tearmes. And the Parsnep roote hanged on the necke, doth help the swelling of the throte, and no venomous beast shall harme the person which beareth the roote about him. And the seedes of the Parsnep drunke with wine, and applied in plaister forme to the priuie place (as *Dioscorides* writeth) doth drawe downe the tearmes, helpeth the straightnes of making water, and the paine of the side, which otherwise is called the plurisie. And the roote applyed plaisterwise doth helpe the bite or sting of venamous wormes. Also the roote sodden and eaten, doth cause vrine, and prouoketh the veneriall act. And the leaues brused and laide plaisterwise with honye, doth cleanse and heale the great eating in the vlcers. And the hearb with the roote shred togither, and distilled about the end of March, which drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantitye of three ounces at a time, and the palsie members bathed with the water, dooth helpe the shaking of them. And drinking euery night to the quantitye of sixe ounces at a time, doth prouoke the veneriall act and encreaseth the spearm of man: and this water also drunk doth helpe the straightnes of making water.

And now the garden Caret (as writeth *Constantine*) is hot and drye in the second degree. But the Caret which groweth of the owne accorde (named the wilde Caret) is both lesse then the garden or sowen Caret, and is also drye and hot in the third degree . Also the garden Carets tenderly sodden with meate, are pleasant & holsome. But now the wilde Caret boyled in wine, with as many figges as you think need full, and drinke, doth put away the drye cough : and the selfe same wine drunke, dooth helpe the hard fetching of winde.

And

And the hearb or roote boyled in lie or water, and washing the head therwith, doth help the shedding of the haire, proceeding of a colde cause: and three hand-fuls of this hearbe boyled in wine & oyle, and applied plaisterwise on the belly doth put away winde & heateth the stomack. And the hearb boyled with mallowes and hearb mercury in wine and oyle, and applyed in plaister-forme on the nauill, dooth help gripings of the bowels. These hitherto of the properties both of the Parsnep and Caret.

Of the ordring, care, and secrets, of the Mellons and all kinde of Pompions. Chap. 60.

MElons, and all kindes of the Pompions, desire (in a maner) the same earth and aire which the Citrones and Cucumbers doe, and yet the earth not so fatte nor so much dunged, whereby they may growe the pleasaunter in taste and be the soner ripe. And all kinds ought to be sowen thin, as the seedes put two foote a sunder in the earth, well laboured, and cast diligently into beds, for that they ioy in largenesse of rome where they may spread hether & thether. And they be also greatly comforted with hearbes growing neare to them, so that they neede little weeding: And they ought to be often watred, vntill they be well sprung vp, but after you may not: and they be then ripe to be eaten, when they sauour sweete and appeare yellowe within. Also those Melons or Pompions be the pleasaunter in eating, which haue farre smaller seeds then the other.

And there be other kindes of them which be small, greene, and verie long, and all (in a manner) are crooked, which be named Melons, and doe also eate sowre, like the Citrones, hauing the like taste in the eating: but they be not so colde as Citrons, and therfore the better digested. And if you would make them sweete in the eating, then let the seeds be steeped for three daies together, in the sweete licour made of water and honye, called otherwise Mulse, or in sweete Cowe milke, and after the drying, set orderly in the earth: for so the Pompions comming vpof those seeds, wilbe far sweeter and plea-

sant of tast. And the Pompions will sauour and smell verie sweete, if the seedes be laid for a good whiles among Rose leaues, and that those leaues mixed with the seeds, be so put into the earth, or otherwise the seedes bee either steeped in Rose water, or in some other pleasant sweet Water, and then set (after the drying in the shadowe) into the ground. And heere learne, that Cats ought carefully to be defended from the Pompions, for that they greedily desire to come to them.

And as touching the other secrets, as to make them grow timely, very big, and without seeds: Read heereafter, where we intreat of the ordering of Gourds and Cucumbers.

The Phisicke helpes.

The Melons be cold and moist in the second degree: but those which be sweet in tast, are temperatly cold, & the seeds haue the like propertie in medicine to bee vsed. And pleasantly dooth the Pompion eate, yet very hardly digesteth, through the coldnes mixed to the moysture of it. And the Pompion is then to bee eaten, when the stomacke before is thoroughly cleansed, in that the same doth lightly alter into those humours, and doth so slacke digestion, by hauing preheminence in the stomacke. And of this wee learne by the mind of the ancient men, that we eat the Pompions fasting, and to eat no other meat after them, vntill they bee halfe digested in the body. And the eating of them do greatly helpe vnnatural heats and wicked Agues. And the seeds do purge the skin, if the skin bee washed with the decoction of them. And the Melons haue the vertue of cleansing, as writeth *Galen* in his booke *De alimentorum facultatibus*: and of this they may aptly cleanse the spots of the face, or Sun-burning, red pimples, and the foulnesse of the bodie, through the spots of sundry colours. And the person which is ill coloured in the face, let him or her take the seedes of the Melon, pilling off the vpper skin of them, vnto which put a litle beane meale, and working the seeds into fine pouder, mixe them well together, & after make small cakes of the same with Rose-water which drie in the Sunne, and when they bee thus dried,

then

then wash the face with those cakes orderly, and they wil after cause the face become very cleare and faire, and cleanse the filthie spots of the skin. And the seeds eaten or drunk, doe cause vrine, and purge the lungs and kidneis. And more doe the seeds worke in the lungs than in the bladder, for that a more stronger and mightier remedy ought to be ministred in the stone of the bladder, than in the stone of Kidneis or Loynes. And the vpper rinde of the Melon laid to the forhead, doth stay the running of the eies. And the root of the Melon doth heale such vlcers that stand full of matter, if the same be applied plaister-wise with honie on the places. And many doe eat the Melons with vinegar, mixing with it the Penny-royall and Onions togeather, for so they temper the harming force of the colde of it: and the Mellons distilled, which ought to be done when they bee ripe, and shred into smal peeces, the water drunke once euery morning, vnto the quantity of three or foure ounces, for the space of a moneth, doth greatly helpe the stone, causeth vrine, and purgeth the Kidneis: also the same water cooleth and delaieth all inward heats not vnnatural, cooleth the liuer, and ceaseth the thirst tempered with sugar. And this water dooth helpe a hot cough, if linnen clothes dipped in it be applied without, and it both putteth away heats, & swellings of the body, wheresoeuer they shall be. These hitherto of the properties of the Melons and all the kinds of Pompions.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Cucumber. Cap. 54.

Cucumbers be either sowen or set in beds or in furrows, a foote and a halfe high, and three foote broad, and the spaces betweene the furrowes ought to be eight foot broad, whereby they may the fréelier spread out and runne abroad. And Palladius willeth the séeds after the sowing, to be often watered, vntill they bee somewhat sprung vp, for that they ioy much in moisture.

And after they be thus sprung vp, which commonly do appeare after the first or seuenth day sowing, then may you water them no longer, for that the watring afterward doth some destroy and kill them. And héere learne, that when the

sæds be sown, you ought then in the sixt or eight day following, to sæ if the sæds be then hard or opened, a sure note or token that they may be good, but if the sæds be soft, then doe they throughly declare to be naught.

And in this case found, you ought to set other in their places, prooving againe the sixt day after, which finding in like condition corrupted, then set other in their places, and this so often do, vntill they appeare aboue the earth. And they also desire to bee sowen or set in a fat earth, well dressed, dunged, and moist, and set in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and also in the beginning of May: and after their comming vp, they neither need raking or weeding with the hands: for that they be much holpen with the other hearbes growing neare vnto them. And to make them the tenderer and pleasanter in the eating, steepe the sædes for two daies before the sowing, in sheeps milke mixed with hony, or as Pliny writeth, in water mixed with hony, or in water mixt with sugar, for so do they cause the tenderer, whiter, and pleasanter Cucumbers, both in the smel and tast, and fairer also to the sight. And the same experience doe Columella, Florentine the Græke, Pliny, and Palladius write. And the Cucumbers also will growe long, white, and tender, if that vnder the branches of the Cucumbers growing, you set either a boule or pan of water and hony, two hand breadth beneath them, for by that means they be caused ỹ like, as writeth Gargilius Martialis. And as they spread and runne out into length, so ought they then to bee borne vp with props and other meanes from the earth, for the weaknes of their branches, and vnto the better growing and prospering of the Cucumbers. And if you will haue Cucumbers without sæds, then before the setting, dip your sæd in the oile of Sauine, mixt with the hearb Culix brused, and the cucumbers wil after grow the like. And to haue Cucumbers timely ripe, and in a manner all the yeare, then vse the sæds in the like order, as shall after be taught of the gourds, and that they also be set in such vessels or baskets, that they may afterward in the cold season, be drawne vnder the succour of some warme place in the house, and in warme and

sunny

sunny daies set againe abroad. And they may also be set vnder the close couering of the walke in a garden, from the cold winds and frosts, and from the great heat of the Sun, and so continue al the yeare through, as write both Pliny and Columella, that Tiberius Cæsar had the like. And beware that they which haue their monethly courses, doe not then either come neare, nor handle them in no wise, for feare of hindring their growth afterwardes, and as some thinke, they doe kill the yong Cucumbers, by their loking then vpon them. And to haue besides your cucumbers with litle moisture in them, let then the hole in the furrow, in which you shal set the sæds bee filled halfe vp with chaffe, and the other halfe couered againe with earth, and water them nothing at all after the doing on this wise.

The Phisicke helpes.

Cucumbers be colde and moist in the second degree, as writeth *Aegineta*, and doe hardly digest, but the outwarde part of them dooth cause a perfiter moisture to such hauing hot and strong stomackes, and extinguisheth thirst. And the whole substance also of the Cucumber eaten in the sommer, dooth greatly profite such, which then exercise themselues with any labour. But the eating of them do much harme the flegmatick and dilicate persons, which doe no labour of body, and that to their stomackes especially. And yet the water or iuice of them doth help such diseased with the Ague, and ceaseth thirst.

Also the meat of the Cucumbers hard within, and heauy in the hand, be daungerous to the stomacke, and of this the ripe ones be the oftner willed to be eaten, which are known on this wise, that when they bee soft in the feeling, and light in the hand, then they be fittest to be eaten. And the seedes drunke in milke, do greatly helpe such hauing a blistred blader, & drunk in wine with so many seeds of Cummin as you may well take vp with three fingers, and bruised altogether, doth greatly helpe the cough. And the seedes also bruised, and drunke with womens Milke, dooth helpe the frenzinesse: and also dooth helpe those that spitte matter vppe, being

being drunke with a little quantitie of Cummin seeds. And the cucumber eaten doth cause a soluble belly, and profiteth the stomacke, as writeth *Dioscorides*: and the smell of them doth restore the person out of his wit. And the seedes haue a meane force to cause vrine: and the seedes boyled in wine, and laid plaister-wise, with the greene leaues vppon, dooth helpe the bite of Dogs. And the seedes bruised and tempered with honny, and that laid on hot burning Pushes, dooth quallifie the heate, and cleare them. These hitherto of the properties of the Cucumber.

Of the ordering, care, and secret of the Gourd. Cap. 62.

THe Gourdes desire to bee sowen or set in a fat grounde, moyst, dunged, and well laboured, as writeth Palladius. And in watering the seeds often they prosper the better, for that they much ioye, and are holpen with moisture, although there be some which increase with a small watring, and be also more pleasanter by this in the eating. And if you happen to set the seedes in a drie ground, then set an earthen pan ful of water neere to them, putting clothes or lists made sharpe at the one end, and hanging halfe out of the pan ouer the edges of it, that they may so drop continually water on them in the forme of feltring, as the wise name it: And this way also of the watering of them dooth greatly helpe in a growth. And further Palladius willeth the seedes to be set in the end of the month of Aprill, and beginning of the moneth of May, a three or foure fot asunder, and in such sort, as that two of the seeds be thrust into the earth together, with three of the fingers, and that the blunt ends also be turned downward, and the sharp ends standing vpward. And that a night before they be thus planted in the earth, the seeds be put into a pan of water, casting then foorth such seedes which swim aboue, and the other not the like swimming, or rather lying in the bottome, set in the earth well mixed with dung. And they may not be set in low furrowes, least the raine falling, and filling those furrowes, do so choke and kil the yong plants sprung vp And when they be well sprung vp, and appeare aboue the earth, then rake the earth, putting it well about

them

them, and as nede shall require, to vse to water the plants. And if they happen to be set in an earth somwhat lose, then after they be sprung vp into some bignes, the earth round about ought to be deep digged vp that the rots may so stretch and run out diuers wais. And as they grow vp still, you may make a couer ouer them like to an harbour, vnto the height of a man, that the leaued branches may bee laid ouer, to giue shadowe, and the leaues also laid on the Gourdes to defend the heat of the sunne, may so cause them to grow the better. And if not on this wise, then may you let their vine runne along on the earth, if you list. And to this also in doing the like shal much auail, wherby they may the soner send forth their fruits, and the more store, if that the principaller and bigger heads be a litle broken of in the tops, that they may so cause other branches to spring forth of the Gourds.

And Columella, Pliny, and Palladius doe write, that the sæds taken forth of the neck of the Gourd, and those set with the sharpe ends vpright, and both dunged and watered, doth after bring forth long and smal Gourds. And the sæds which lie in the middle of the belly of the Gourd, set with the blunt ends vpright in the earth, and both dunged and watered, do after send forth big and large Gourds. And of those doe men after they be dried, make bottles to cary wine, Ale, or Beare in, to refresh the body withall, in the trauell of any long iorney. And those sædes which lie in the bottome of the Gourd, set with the great and blunt ends vpright in the earth, doe after cause both wide and large Gourds. And sowing all the seeds together in one hole you must after they be wel grown aboue the erth, stay them vp with props made for the nonce. And if the yong plants bee molested with græne flies of the garden, then set by them the branches of the hearb Organy, and it will either kill them by lighting there-vpon, or at the least cause them that they increase no more. And to haue Gourds to grow without sæds (like as was taught before) of the Cucumber, then lay your sæds for three daies before, either in Sauaine oyle (as Palladius writeth) or in the iuice of the hearbe named Culex. And the like may bee caused, if

that the first stalk springs vppe, bee so digged about, that the head of the same may appeare, and as it alwaies groweth vp, so to bee digged bare of the earth: and this doe the third time, if nede shall so require. And this also doe, that as the branches spring forth, and run along on the earth, the like cut away of them, preserving alwais the principal, and this will so cause them to bring forth Gourds without séds, hauing onely but a soft pulpe within. And now to haue either timely Gourds or Cucumbers, then at the beginning of the spring put fine sifted earth, either into an old basket, or deepe earthen pan, & the same well mixed with dung, sprinckle or moisten a little with water, and after set the same abroad in warme and sunny daies, & in a smal raine, but at the setting of the Sun, set the same againe vnder some couert, and this often doe, in watering it in the meane whiles vntill all the frosts and cold season be past. And after that when a fair day commeth, then set the whole pan or basket to the brim in the earth well dressed & trimmed, couering and raking the earth ouer and about it, and after ordering the same (as afore is taught) you shal so haue the timely fruits, either of ỳ Gourd, or cucumber. And the same also you may the sooner procure, & with lesser trauell & paines, if that you cut off the ranke and superfluous shoots, either of the gourds or cucumbers, for by that meanes will they speedilier send forth their fruits. And to make diuers formes like to birds or beasts, & sundry perfit letters (of the Romaine fashion) on your gourds or cucumbers, then take the yong fruit of either, as the same groweth on the branches, inclosing into a mould of the like bignes to the fruit, in the which let be imprinted deep or hollow, in the forme that you desire to haue after on your Gourds or Cucumber, and the like shall then appeare when as the fruit is come to his full growth and bignes. But further of this may you learne, in my litle treatise of Natural and artificial conclusions, where I writ more at large, both of the same, & the compositions of sundrie straunge formes of apples, and other fruits, with other pleasant (and that right marueilous) maters to read and heare. And now to come to our former matter

ter in these: if that you desire to haue long and smal gourds, then take a long Cane bored through, or a hollow pipe, into which put the very yong gourd, & let the same so hang, which after wil stretch out all the length of the hollow pipe, for that ỳ matter which should run into a breadth, is by that means sent into a length. And Pliny writeth, that he saw a gourd of 9. foot long. And a like conclusion of making the Gourds of such a length may be done, if that you set vnder the Gourds a pan or boule of water, a hand breadth or somewhat more beneath the ends hanging down, which in the next day following you shal find stretched out to the water, and thus setting the vessell deeper, they wil shoot out longer. And on this wise, you may make them shoot out of a marueilous length, without any other craft or practise of the like. But if you take away the vessell of water, then doe they after bend and turne vpward, so much do the Gourds ioy in the moisture, & otherwise refuse the drieth. And Pliny writeth, that the gourds do so mightily hate oyle, that setting a boule or other vessell of the same vnder them, in the like sort as you did the water, will in the next morow, bee turned or bended another way. And if not turned on this wise, then will they bee bended (in disdeining the oyl) into the fashion of a hooke, which you shal manifestly try in the space of one night. And heere learn, that both Columella and Florentius giue speciall warning, that no such person hauing then the monthly course, do handle or come neer, either to the gourd or cucumber as they grow, for by the handling or approching neere to them, they soone after wither away.

And if such also being in the like case doth then but look on them, they either kil the yong ones with their looke, or cause them to growe vnpleasaunt, or els corrupted and withered. And those Gourdes which you minde to keepe for seedes, let them be hanged vp with their stems or stalkes vnto winter time, and dried as they hang, either in the heat of the sun, or in the smoke (as Palladius writeth) for that otherwise ỳ seeds wil putrifie and serue after to no vse. And if you mind to keep the fresh and greene Cucumbers and Gourdes a long time,

then hang them within a Hogshead, or other vessell of white wine Lees, not yet turned and sowr, in such sort, that they be wholly couered with Lees.

And in the like condition & maner you may preserue them a long time, if that you lay them into a brine prepared for the only purpose. Also the Gourdes and Cucumbers be the like preserued for a long time, if that they bee hanged high, in a pipe hauing vineger in it, or at ỳ least so high, that they tuch not the vineger in no wise. And the vessell besides serving to this vse, ought to bee well pitched about, that the vinegar breath not forth, in that the vineger is so penitrable, through the thinnesse of the parts. And the Gourdes and Cucumbers may best be kept fresh and faire all the yeare through without putrifying, if that you put them into the distilled water of vineger, which will not after suffer them to putrifie, but maintaine their freshestate, as hath often beene tried of the skilfull practitioners. And besides these, if that you cut off yong ones, whiles they be yet tender, and scauld them in hot water, and after lay them forth to cole all a night through, being cleare and calme, and on the morrow put into a sharpe brine, which will so keepe them fresh a long time. And now by al meanes aboue taught, you may keepe Cucumbers and Gourdes fresh all the winter through. And you may besides all these make your Gourdes laxatiue, and to purge the bellie, if that you infuse the seedes for a day and night, in the licour made of Rubarbe, Scamonie, Coloquintida, Agaricke, and such like purges: and after this, sowe the seedes in the earth, in like order as before was taught. And to make them pleasant of tast and smell, order the sædes in like sort before the setting of them, as you wer taught in the other chapters going before.

The Phisicke helps

The Gourd is colde and moist in the second degree, and the seedes doe serue to the vse of medicine: and the Gourde also is not to be eaten raw, for that the same is so vnsauourie meat, and therefore it ought the rather to be sodden, rosted, or fried before the eating, as writeth *Galen*. Now the seeds

cleane

cleane picked from the vpper skin, and sodden in barley water, and after strained and drunke, doth helpe the diseases in the liuer, the kidneis, and the bladder, and the impostumes of the breast, and prouoketh vrine: and if a sicke person shall abhor to drinke of this water, then may you make a sirope of it with Sugar, for that the same so greatly profiteth vnto all agues. And for the heat of the liuer, take the iuice of the peeces and meat of the Gourds, and temper the same with milke and vinegar, and after dipping a linnen cloath in the same, apply the liuer without, and it much helpeth. And the gourds also ought to be hanged vp and dried, as afore was specified, and the winter aproching, the seeds ought then to be taken forth and rubbed with salt, that so the clammy humors may be auoyded. And the kernels also ought to be laid in a drie place, least the moisture corrupt the seedes. And the seedes may well be kept for three yeares in good efficacie. And the meat and peece of the Gourde laid plaister-wise to the fore part of the head of yong children, dooth so take away the inflamation and great heate of the braine and heade. And the iuice of the same annointed on hot burning gouts, dooth asswage the burning heat of the same, and also quallifieth the inflamations of the eies. Also the iuice pressed out of the meat of the gourd, and the same dropped into the eares, doth aswage the burning heat of them. And to the same vse it may either be applied alone, or els mixed with oyle of Roses, and so dropped hot into the ears. And the same iuice mixed with the oyle of Roses, and annointing the ridge bone and loynes with the same, dooth aswage the burning heat of the Ague. And the same doth also help the burning heat of that griefe called the holy fire. Also the ashes made of the rinds of the Gourds, and strawed on the vlcers of shamefast places, now grown vnto a rottennesse, doth not onely cleanse, but bringeth them vnto a scarre: which ashes strawed on a burning, doth marueilously heale the same. And the decoction of the meat of the Gourde, with a litle honnie and Niter, and that drunke, doth loose gently the belly. And if any making hollow the raw Gourd, and doth after fill the same with wine,

& setteth it abroad for a space, and that on the morow drinketh moderatly of it fasting, it doth also gently loose the bellie. And the raw meat of the Gourd shred, and laid plaisterwise on swelings and hard risings of the flesh, dooth greatlie aswage them. And the Gourd full ripe, ought to be distilled together with the seedes, and finely shred. And now the distilled water mixed with sugar, doth cease the thirst, helpeth the cough proceeding of a hot cause, and looseth the belly. And the same water drunke twice a day, for twenty or forty daies together, to the quantity of three vnces at a time, doth helpe the stone of the kidneis. And in like manner drunke for ten daies together, prouoketh vrine, and cleanseth the raines and bladder. Moreouer, the same water also drunke, doth qualifie the burning of the ague. These hitherto of the properties of the Gourd.

Of the ordering and care of the Beane of Egypt. Cap. 63.

The Beane of Egipt, ought to be sowen or set in the moneth of Februarie, and loueth also to growe in a moyst place, fat and watrish, & to come vp among running springs, but for the quality of the ground, it greatly forceth not, so that the same be alwaies watered, as need doth require. And it may in a manner beare continually leaues, if the same be defenced from the cold, by some little couer or shed, standing vnder all the winter time. And now the place from whence the slips of the most plants be daily sliped off from the stalks, for the intent to be set againe, will sufficiently instruct anie meane witted person, how at times conuenient he should set those againe in the earth. And where at this time, wee doe omit, and ouerpasse sundry Posie and Garland floures, with herbes profitable to be eaten, it is, for that they require no other manner or diligence of dressing and ordering, then the former taught. And many also of these come vp of their own accord, and sundry others, which delight in the like order of planting and sowing as the former. And therefore let this

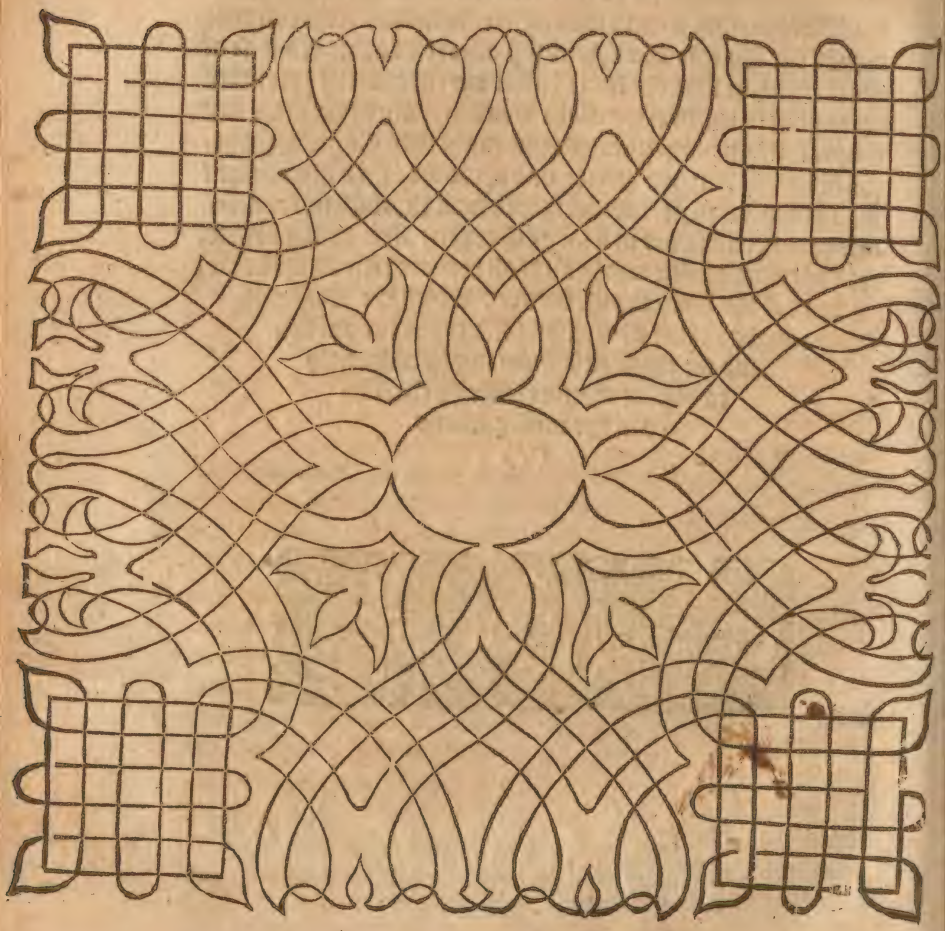
Treatise

Treatise fauourably passe, which I meane hereafter to increase with sundry pleasant floures, and profitable hearbes, needfull to be sowen and set in the most Gardens. And in the meane time, looke for a proper treatise (and that right profitable) of the most maruelous gouernment, vse, and commodity of the Honnie Bées, which I adioyne to this treatise of Gardening, in that the same (after my iudgement) seemeth belonging to the matter of the Garden. And this after my simple skil, I haue reduced and brought into English, gathered first by a learned writer out of the woorkes of auncient men of Husbandrie, and set foorth for a through instruction, and perfite furniture in a large Garden: And besides these, for the great profite and healthfull commoditie to the bodie, both of the Honnie and Ware, which the Bées cunningly gather of the swéet floures of the garden.

And for this cause Bées ought diligently to be placed, and carefully cherished in the most gardens.

(:)

A proper knot for a Garden, where is ſpare rome enough, the which may be ſet either with Time or Iſope, at the diſcretion of the Gardener.



CERTAINE NECESSARY PRE-ceptes, in the cutting vp, plucking away, gathering & preſeruing, of the moſt hearbes, flowers, ſeedes, and rootes, ſeruing eſpeciallye to *Medicine*.

CHAP. 64.

THoſe hearbes which ſerue moſt for the pot to be boyled with meate, ought to be cut vp and gathered, when as they be well growen in height, and that with a sharpe knife, ſomewhat aboue the earth. But of ſundry hearbs be the leaues onely gathered, and that with the hand plucked vp and broken of, when they become (as it were) vnto their full growth: which be, the Lettuce, the Endiue, the Succory, the Bëtes, the Arach, the Clary, the Borage, Marigold leaues, Parcely, Colewort leaues, and ſuch like. But in the winter time, the ſtalkes be wholy cut vp, leauing then no ſtems behinde. And beſides, in all theſe aboue rehearſed, except the Parcely, the Fennell, the Sage, and certaine others: if that the ſtems or ſtalkes after they be well come, be then broken off or cut away, they wil continue the longer grëne and without ſëding. And when any would vſe any hearbes hot of qualitie, then let him rather gather the hearbes freſh and grëne, then vſe thoſe being drye, for that the grëne doe leſſe heate, in that the moiſture of thoſe grëne doth greatly mittigate the heat in them.

And for the onely vſe of Sallets, gather your hearbs, being then very young and tender buds, except of the Lettuce and Endiue, which after the minde of the Gardners, do eate pleaſaunter being growen vnto a whitenes, and then eaten yong and grëne. And now thoſe hearbs (for the vſe of medicine) ought rather to be gathered and cut vp, when as they

be in a manner come vnto their growth, and that before the colour of the floures begin to change and the seeds somwhat appeare: And this also ought to be done in a clare & warme day, and that they haue bene moistned with some showers falling for two or three daies before, so that they ought not to bee gathered when any rayne, moysture, or wet dewe is on them, nor being then drye parched with the heate of the Sunne, nor in a raynie and clowdy day, for anye of these doe much hinder the keeping any time in their vertue.

Also they ought to bee gathered, when they be full of iuice and freshe, and that not the smaller or bigger are to be chosen, but the meaner, and such besides which fall not to withering. And onely the tender toppes, the leaues and flowers are to bee gathered and dryed in the shadowe, in a place open toward the South, not being moyste, & defended from the dust and smoake, and for the better defending and preseruing of them, to be put vp in bagges close bound at the mouth, and in boxes for that vse.

And they also keepe their strength and vertue, for one whole yeare, so that they are to be renued euerye yeare, vnlesse the hearbes bee gathered in such a yeare, that the season then shall be long without rayne, and that the sommer following bee verye moyste: for then may you rather vse those hearbes gathered in the drye sommer before, then those in the raynie yeare following. And the flowers for the vse of medicine, ought then to be gathered, when as they be in greatest force, and full open abroad, vnlesse the Lillye, the Flourdelice, and Rose, which ought rather to bee gathered, when as they be not wholye opened: And they ought also in the like order to be dryed and laide vp, as aboue was taught of the hearbes, and so they last also for a yeare, in their strength and vertue.

And they ought besides to be renued euerye yeare, like as was taught before of the hearbes. And seedes ought to bee gathered when they be throughly ripe, and before they shedde or fall off, and this also must be in a cleare and faire day.

Also.

Also the fuller seedes and not wrinckled, and such which keepe the perfect sauour and taste of the kinde of the hearbe, are rather to bee gathered and kepte, and dryed in the like condition as the hearbes, and afterward put into glasses, or hanged vp in bagges, and this in a drye place, being free from moysture.

And the frutes of the plantes, are to bee gathered, when as they be in their full ripenesse, and not before they beginne to fall off. And both the fuller and weightier are to be chosen, which ought afterward to be dryed in the Sunne, or in an Ouen, by reason of the moysture contayned in them.

And the rootes are to bee gathered in their apte places, and the best of euery kinde, and that the frutes be lately fallen off and the leaues of the stemms begin to shed away, and this you must doe in a cleare day, for the greate rayne doth weaken them, and filleth them full of moysture.

And the greater rootes may be kepte for two yeares, but the lesser onely for a yeare, if they be hanged vp to drye in a shadowey place, and that from dust and smoake. And as touching the whole hearb togither, the same ought to be gathered when it shall come vp vnto the full growth.

And whatsoeuer are gathered in the decrease of the moon, be better to vse, and will longer be kept then those which be gathered in the increase of the moon. And the worthier herbs bee those, and to greater effecte, which keepe their liuely colour, stronger in sauour, and more apparant in taste.

And the Roses and other floures gathered in a faire and warme day, doe yeilde a sweeter distilled water, then those flowers which bee gathered in a wet and cloudy day: and this distilled water besides lasteth longer and to better effect then that other of the contrary manner. And further learn, that from the foure and twenty day of the moneth of March vnto the foure and twenty day of June, are the leaues of all maner of hearbes most of strength and vertue, and do especially serue in that time, to the vse of medicine. And from the xxiij. day of June, vnto the xxiij. of September, are the stems

and stalkes in their ful strength and vertue to the vse of medicine. And from the xvij. day of September, vnto the xxv. of March againe, are the rootes of the most hearbs in their full strength and vertue to be ministred in medicines. And heere also learne, that the wilde hearbs are stronger in vertue then the garden hearbs, although the wilde be lesser in bignes, as Pliny writeth. And the wilde hearbs also growing vpon the hilles and mountaines, be farre stronger in effect then those wilde growing in plaines & lower ground. And to conclude, all hearbes and sedes which more aptly serue to the vse of medicine, ought rather to be kept and hanged vp in bags, but the floures close stopped in narowe mouthed glasses, that the sauour & strength of the floures breathe not forth, and that these also be set and hanged vp in shadowey places frē from moisture, & from the dust and smoake. And the roots which you mind to kepe greene, are better referued & kept in light sand, except they be such rootes which be rather kept dryed, and are also better preserued in a drye and shadowey place, as aboue was taught. But the sedes of the Lekes and the Onyons, and of certaine other hearbs, be better kept in their huskes, then the most sedes of the other hearbs. And heere learne the opinion of the learned Phisitian Montagnana, in the gathering of the rootes, floures, and frutes, seruing to the vse of medicine, which affirmeth that the roots ought not to be gathered vntill the fall of the leaues, and this especially from the middle of September, vnto the beginning of November, and the floures are to be gathered from the middle of May, to the beginning of July, and ought to be gathered according to the diuersitie of times of the hearbs.

Thus endeth the second Booke of the care, ordering, and secrets, of the most hearbes of the Garden.

A necessarie Table of the matters expressed in eche Chapter of the first tvvo Bookes.

These conteyned in the first Booke.

VVHat three poynts are to be learned of euery gardener, minding to haue a fruitfull Garden, the helth that may be recouered by walking in ỹ same, and the commoditie of Gardens placed neare to the Citie. Cap. j.

Of the standing of Gardens, the water necessarie to them, & of the propertie of the ground, with the qualitie and temperatenesse of the ayre, & cõdition besides of the winds. c. ij

The consideration and choising out of good and excellent ground, and the knowledge of euery earth, what the same is. cap. iij.

How a garden may be diuerse wayes fenced and inclosed, the maner and secrete of making a liuely & strong hedge. cap. iiij.

Of the first Maze. cap. v.

Of the dung and dunging of Gardens, with the digging, dressing, leuelling, and disposing of the quarters and beds. cap. vj.

Of the seconde Maze. cap. vij.

Certaine precepts and rules of the auncient men, both in the choyce, & proper sowing of the seeds. ca. viij.

Of the times in sowing & proper ordering of seedes, with the watering & weeding of the yong plants in comming vp, the diuerse maner of remouing and setting againe of the herbes when they be somewhat growen vp. cap. ix.

Certaine helpes and secretes for the Garden seedes, as well before, as after the sowing of them, that they may be harmed by no inwarde nor outwarde meanes. cap. x.

Certaine speciall times to bee noted and obserued, eyther for their ayde and fauour to be chosen, or for their annoyance and commoditie to bee eschewed, for sowing, planting, or grafting. cap. xj.

Certaine helpes and secretes agaynst haile, lightnings tempests, mystes, rust, frosts & burning heate. ca. xij.

Certaine helpes and secrets agaynst the Garden wormes, the greene flies, the canker wormes, the great mothes, the snayles with shelles, and without shels, that harme and gnaw as well the leaues of Trees and fruites, as the herbes and yong plants comming vp. cap. xiij.

Certaine helpes and secretes against the Garden moles, pismires, gnats, flies with the long hinder legges, breeses, fielde mise, backes, snakes, adders, & other venomous wormes, the frogs and todes, which gnaw, harme, and destroy, as well the trees, and fruites, as the hearbes, floures, &c. cap. xiij.

These described in the seconde Booke.

OF the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lettuce, the phisick helpes of the same, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. j.

Of the ordering, care, and secretes, both of the Endiue and Succorie, the phisick helpes of both the herbs, with the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. ij.

Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the herbe Blete, the phisicke helpes of the same, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. iij.

Of the ordering, care, and secretes of

the hearbe Spinage, the phisicke helpes of the same, the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. iiij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Orache or Arage, the phisicke helpes of the same, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. v.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Beetes, the phisicke helpes of the same, and the light charge of the remedies. cap. vj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of Colewoorts, the phisicke helpes and easie charge of the remedies. ca. vij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the land cresses, the phisicke helpes and light cost, &c. cap. viij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Parcely, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing, &c. cap. ix.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Sperage, the phisick helps and the preparing easie of cost. cap. x.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Sauerie, the phisicke helpes of the same, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the running Time, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Lumbardie Louage, the phisick helpes and remedyes. &c. cap. xiij.
Of the ordering and care of the greater Garden Hallowes, the phisicke helpes, and light cost. &c. cap. xiiij.
Of the ordering and care of the Fenel, the phisick helpes and light cost of the remedies. cap. xv.
Of the ordring and care of the Annis, the phisicke helpes and light cost of the remedies. cap. xvj.
Of the order and care of the Cummine, the phisicke helpes, and the small cost. cap. xvij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Coliander, the phisicke helpes and easy charge. cap. xviij.
Of the ordering and care of Mustard seedes, the phisicke helpes and easie cost. cap. xix.
Of the ordering and care both of the Cheruill and Capers. cap. xx.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe Dill, the phisicke helpes and light cost. cap. xxj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the herbe Rue, the phisicke helpes of the same, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xxij.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe Isope, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing. cap. xxiij.
Of the ordering and care of the Mintes, the phisitke helpes and lighte cost. cap. xxiiij.
Of the ordering and care of the garden Time, the phisicke helpes and easie charge. cap. xxv.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe Organe, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing. cap. xxvj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Violettes, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xxvij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of all the Roses, the phisicke helpes and easye preparing of the remedyes. cap. xxviij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the herbe Basill, the phisick helpes and easie preparing of the remedyes. cap. xxix.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the sweete Maiorame, the phisicke helpes & the easie preparing. ca. xxx.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Marigolde, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing cap. xxxj.
Of the ordering and care of the Lauender, the phisicke helpes and easie remedie. cap. xxxij.
Of the ordering & care of the Spicknarde, the phisicke helpes and light preparing. cap. xxxiij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the

the White Lillie, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedyes. cap. xxxiij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of of the Wood Lillie, the phisick helps and easie preparing, &c. cap. xxxv.
Of the ordering and care of the floure Deluce, the phisick helpes and easie cost. cap. xxxvj.
Of the ordering and care of the Pionie, the phisicke helpes and lighte cost. cap. xxxvij.
Of the ordering and care of the White Poppie, the phisicke helpes and easy charge. cap. xxxviij.
Of the ordering and care of the floure Petillus. cap. xxxix.
Of the ordering and care of the Velvet floure, or floure Armor, the phisick helpes and charge. cap. xl.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Gilliflowre, & Carnation. ca. xlj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Strawberies, the phisick helps and easie preparing, &c. cap. xlij.
Of the ordering and care both of the Borage and Buglosse, the phisicke helpes of both, and the easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xliij.
Of the ordering and care of the Rosemarie, the phisicke helpes and easie cost. cap. xliij.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe Germander, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing, &c. cap. xliv.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe named the blessed Thistell, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xlvj.
Of the ordering and care of the herbe Wormwood, the phisicke helpes, and the easie charge. cap. xlvij.
Of the ordering and care of the Sothernwood, the phisicke helpes and light cost. cap. xlviij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the herbe Sauge, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedies. cap. xlix.
Of the ordering and care of Purselane: the phisicke helpes and light cost. cap. l.
Of the ordering and care of the Peneropall, the phisicke helpes and light cost. cap. lj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Artichocke, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing of the remedies. cap. lij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Leekes, the phisicke helpes and easie cost. cap. liij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the garden Onion, the phisick helps and easie preparing of the remedyes. cap. liij.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Garlike the phisicke helpes and easie cost. cap. lv.
Of the ordering and care of the great Garlike, with the other commodities besides, &c. cap. lvj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Radishe, the Phisicke helpes and easie preparyng, &c. cap. lvij.
Of the ordering and care of the Nauew, the phisick helpe, &c. cap. lviij.
Of the ordering and care both of the Parsnep & pealow Carot, the phisicke helpes and easie, &c. cap. lix.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of melons, & al the kinds of pompons, the phisicke helpes & light, &c. ca. lx.
Of the ordering, care, & secretes of the Cucumbers, the phisick, &c. cap. lxj.
Of the ordering, care, and secretes of the Gourds, the phisicke helpes and easie preparing, &c. cap. lxij.
Of the ordering and care of the Weane of Egypt, with other matter. cap. lxiij.
Certaine necessarie precepts in the cutting vp, plucking away, gathering, and preseruing of the mosse floures, seedes and rootes, seruing especially to the vse of medicine. cap. lxiiij.
The conclusion to the Reader.

FINIS.

Hyd

A profitable instruction of the perfect ordering of *Bees, with the maruellous* nature, property, and gouernement of them: and the necessary vses, both of their Honnie and Waxe, *seruing diuerslie, as well in inward, as outward causes:* gathered out of the best writers.

To which is annexed a Treatise, intituled: certaine Husbandly coniectures of dearth and plenty *for euer, and other matters also meet for husbandmen* to know, &c.

By *Thomas Hill* Londoner.

¶ *Imprinted at London by* Edward Alde.

1593.

The Authours out of which this Treatise is gathered.

C. Plinius.
Aristotle.
Albertus.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Theophrastus.
Guilhelmus de Conchis.
Galen.
Paule Aegineta.
Cornelius Agrippa.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And sundrie others.

To the worshipfull Maister M.

Gentleman, Thomas Hill wisheth

all health and felicitie.

AS it hath bene, and is yet (worshipfull Sir) a trade commonly vsed among most men, to choose out from a great number, some one vnder whose name and title they may publish their workes: Euen so I (following the steps of the learned, though in all other pointes most inferiour) hauing finished this little Treatise of Bees, and casting with my selfe vnto whome I might present it, found my selfe much bounden vnto your worship, both for your gentlenesse which I haue of late tasted, and also for your friendship which I finde alwaies readie towards mee. And therefore hauing none other waies to recompence the very least parte of your courtesie and gentlenesse, thought it best to gratifie your worshippe with such a simple gift as mine abillitie will suffer mee to bestow vppon such a friend. And although Sir, this Treatise is farre dissonant from your studies, yet considering your earnest desire to knowledge and learning: and againe pondering the pleasauntnesse of the matter, thought this might bee made a recreation for your grauer studies. For when your minde shall be searching for profound reasons, and oppressed with deepe cogitations, then taking and reading this little Pamphlet, it will bring a forgetfulnesse vnto your former wearinesse, and cause a newe delight vnto your minde:

For

For heerein may you see, first the marueilous gouernement of the Bees, through the onely instinct of Nature, as in their obedience to their King, and other officers, in punishing the idle loyterers, in cherishing the true labourers, in their manner of fighting, with such like a great manie, as it is wonderfull to read, and almost vncredible to beleeue: Secondly, the liuely effects and commodities that arise of their Honie and Waxe: And lastly, how profitable they are for the commonwealth, and howe necessarie for mans vse. I might heere speake much in the praise of the Bee, which all I will omit, seeing onelie mine intent is to shewe my selfe mindfull of your good turnes and benefites, desiring you to take this in good part, which proceedeth from a wel willing mind. And I am sorie, that at this present I had none other matter more worthie to haue gratified your worshippe withall: but that wanteth in power, aboundeth in good will. Thus troubling your worship no longer, I commit you to the keping of the Almighty, praying him to increase in you al vertue and godlines, and to graunt you the long yeares of Nestor.

Yours most bounden,

Thomas Hill.

Although (gentle Reader) I haue not giuen thee anie labour of mine owne, but rather haue collected the sayings and writings of many ancient authours, yet I trust they shalbe well accepted of thee without offence. For as he that setteth forth vnto the viewe and reading of all men, such knowledge as by his long studie and experience he hath gotten, is worthy to haue his due reward and commendation: euen so hee is not to bee discommended, who painefully reuoluing the bookes and volumes of manie and diuers ancient writers, reduceth them into one little treatise, for the commodity and profite of the simple & vnlearned sort, for whose onely sakes I haue trauciled in the translation of this worthy matter, touching the right vsage and handling of Bees: a thing verie rare, and seldome seene in the English tongue, and yet verie profitable for a Common-wealth, and commonly vsed among the poore husbandmen, though not in euery point as they ought to bee, yet according to their knowledge and experience. But I to the intent that a further learning might be added to their skil, haue so traueiled therein, that I trust their knowledge shalbe increased, and such as haue no knowledge at all, may be instructed without any other teaching. I haue ioyned this little Treatise vnto my booke of Gardening, for that most men doe ioyne them both togeather, as when they place their Bees in their Gardens, whereas they may with lesse paine, and easilier, gather of the sweet smelling floures, their Honie, and Waxe. And for all these my paines (gentle Reader) I craue nought els of thee, but to giue me that which of dutie in a manner I ought to haue: for if thou doost receiue any commoditie or fruit either by this, or by my other Treatise hereto annexed, which hath to name the Husbandly coniectures, with sundry rules of Phisicke, then giue me the reward of thy good report, and friendly accepting of these two Treatises. and if not, yet accept mine endeuours in good part, which be meant to do thee good. And thus hauing (gentle reader) so trouble thee farther, I commit thee to God, who giue thee the furtherance of knowledge. both in these and all other needfull arts.

¶ A neceſsarie *Table*, ſetting foorth the Contentes of theſe two Treatiſes.

Theſe are treated of in the firſt Treatiſe.

VVHy Bees are named to be creaſted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed or rather pleighted: what woorke the ſwarme newe gathered in the Hiue do firſt take in hand, and whether they may liue after their ſtinges be gone. Cap. 1.

Who firſt taught the preperation and increaſing of Bees, and found out the vſe of honye. cap. 2.

How Bees do naturally engender. cap. 3.

Of the vnperfecte Bees, which men properly name droane Bees. cap. 4.

Whether the Bees drawe breath, or haue any blood within them cap. 5.

Of the greate vtilitie and profite of Bees to mans vſe. cap. 6.

Of the care and and dilligence of Bees. cap 7.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the king of Bees, and of the obedience which they vſe to him cap. 8.

What kind of Bees be beſt & rather to be choſen. cap. 9.

Where Hiues of Bees ought eſpecially to be placed. cap. 10.

What things Bees do cheifly abhor & greatly hate. cap. 11.

By what ſignes men may knowe when the Bees are diſeaſed and how they may be cured. cap. 12.

What manner of perſon the keeper of Bees ought to be. cap. 13.

By what meanes the ſwarme commeth forth, and may be preſerued from flying away. cap. 14.

Of the Bees newe ſetled in a ſwarme togither, and taken and recouered againe. cap. 15.

Which are the beſt and fitteſt Hiues for Bees cap. 16.

Of the cleanlineſſe and ſweetenes of the keeper of Bees, and how the Hiues ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. cap. 17.

How

How Bees lacking honnye, may be fed in the time of their neceſsitie. cap.18.
How the dead Bees may be reſtorei to life againe cap.19.
Of the battailes that Bees haue ſome-times amongſt themſelues. cap.20.
How Bees loſt, may be recouered & foun againe. cap.21.
That the Bees ſting no perſon that commeth neare to their Hiues. cap.22.
When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded. cap.23.
What the honye is, and how from the Hiues the ſame may be prepared to vſe. cap.24.
Which honye is accounted beſt. cap.25.
Of the venomous honnye, and of the wonderfull honnye of Creta. cap.26.
Of the miraculous worthines of honye. cap.27.
How profitable the vſe of honye is in medicine. cap.28.
Of the driuke of honye, which they call the Mulſe water, or ſweete water of the Romaiues. cap.29.
Of the drinke *Oenomell*, which is made of pure wine and honye. cap.30.
Of the ſinguler water of honye, gotten by order of diſtillation. cap.31.
An other manner of diſtilling the honnye, more at large taught. cap.32.
The manner of diſtilling a water from honnye, named the Quinteſſence. cap.33.
The manner of drawing and making waxe of the combes. cap.34.
What waxe is beſt allowed. &c. cap.35.
Of the greate commoditye and benefite of waxe in medicines. cap.36.
Of that which is a ſtaye of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees. cap.37.
How to make waxe white. cap.38.
How to make red waxe. cap.39.
How to drowe a verye profitable oyle out of waxe, for ſundrye vſes. cap.40.

Another way of drawing the oyle of waxe most noble, and doth marueilously helpe the cold Gout, the Sciatick, the swelling of the legges, and all other griefs of a cold cause. cap. 41.

These described in the other Treatise.

CErtaine husbandlie coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer. cap. 1.

An euerlasting Prognostication, of the state and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuarie, written by the auncient and learned *Leopol. Aust.* and other for the commoditie of the wise husbandmen. cap. 2

How to foreknow the state of the yeare by the onely rising of the Dogge starre, out of the husbandrie of *Diophanes*. cap. 3.

Other profitable instructions, right necessarie for husbandmen to know. cap. 4.

A most profitable rule for the preseruation of mans health, through-out the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the mind of diuers learned men of the *Vniuersity of Padua*. cap. 5.

Of the falling sicke on any of the weeke daies, out of that antient Phisition *Hypocrates*. cap. 6.

Of those manifest signes, which declare raine to follow. cap. 7.

Of those manifest signes which declare faire weather to follow. cap. 8.

Hyll.

The first Treatise setteth forth the *strange gouernment, property, and benefite* of Bees, with the commoditie of their Hony and Waxe, which serue vnto many good vses, aswell in outward *as inward causes applied: gathered out of Plinie, Albertus,* Varro, Columella, Palladius, Aristotle, Theophrastus, Cardanus, Guilhelmus de Conchis, Agrippa, and diuers other singuler Authours.

Why Bees are named to bee creasted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed, or rather pleighted. What woorke the swarme new gathered in the hiue first taketh in hand, and whether they may liue after their stings be gone. Cap. 1.

PLinie nameth Bées cleft beasts, because of the diuision or parting betweene of the head and shoulders: and Aristotle nameth them pleighted or ringed, in that their bodies are deuided with pleights and rings. And most men knowe, that the Bées haue neither sinewes, bones, flesh, griskle, backe-bone, nor fat, but are onelie created of certaine mixture, being a meane betweene these, and hauing a verie few intralls. And againe no man maketh to doubt, but that the Bées be a kind of beasts greatly to bee set by for mans vse, and for mans prouision, are nourished of the aire, passing through the deuided places, which they by great diligence and care preserue from beeing stopped, for as soon as they be stopped, they shortly after die, like as the same

we may learne, when any hapneth to fall or light into Oyle, which straight way after die through the oyle stopping then their powers. They haue and fly with four wings, that they may the better cary in their bellies ẏ stings of reuengment. For when two of them trine together in flight, then do they holde and keepe their stings in their mouthes by a greedy desire, or for eagernes sake. Now after the seauen Starrs named virgiliæ, be once risen in sight aboue our horizon then do they hide them in their proper holes, so that they go seldome after abroad vntil the beans do bud, and if they chance to begin at any time to fly abroad, when as a fair day moueth them forward, then slacke they no such daies afterward, but occupie themselues: and first they prepare & make their combs, which they fashion into apt houses, or rather cels of wax, after this they haue yong, and then begin they to gather honny. They liue also the longer by hauing their stings, for that once gon, or taken away, they die forth-with through the lack of their intralls, which they lose together with their stings.

Who first taught the preparation and increasing of bees, and found out the vse of Hony. Cap. 2.

THe report goeth, that one Aristomachus first found out and taught the increasing of bées, whom Pliny writeth to be so ernest in the same, that setting apart al other affairs he only studied night and day how he might best intreat & vse bées according to their kind. But others ascribe this inuention to one Thasius, who (as they say) deserued no lesse commendation, both for his diligence and skill among bées: but this he especially followed in the field, and that far from the town. And of this the common people (as by a nickname) no more named him Thasius, but Agrius, for his wild or rather strange life, which he then led in the field, whome Plinie also affirmeth to haue written a booke of the increasing and multiplying of bées. And Columella ascribeth this inuention, to the inhabitants of the hil (named Hymetus) being the country of Attica, for there (saith hee) was one Aristhonus, who taught (as men write) the true and perfect ordring of them. Pliny again ascribeth the inuention of hony to one Aristeus

a man

a man of Athens. Diodorus Siculus in the first booke of his workes, writeth, that Curetes, a people of Creta, did first find out the hony. Macrobius ascribeth the same to one Saturnus others to the Thessalians: and many to Melissus an auntient king of Creta, others to Nassus liber pater, thus writing, that Liber hath obtained the reward for finding out of honie.

How Bees do naturally engender. Cap. 3.

FIrst the Bées procéd of bées by the actuall doing together, after which they lay egges, sitting vpon them as the hens do on their egs. And when they haue sit on them for the space of 45. daies, then do they hatch their yong ones, which yong (at the first) come forth much like to white worms, except the king, who onely as he is hatched hath wings. At the first time, one of them hatcheth fiue young together, the next time fewer, and so fewer and fewer, vntill thee commeth to one at a time, because the abundance which is in them, doth in the continuance of time weken. In the time of their sitting they make much noyse to get them heat withall. And about the sides of the combs, be somtimes greater bées bred, which men for their sound and noyse doe properly name Trumpeters, and they also haue whole hornes, of which come the bastard bées. There bee also other bées bigger in bodie, much like to the kings, but they bee idle and haue no sting, because of the heauines of their body. All which kindes, Guilihelmus de Conchis did obserue in the Hiues of a certaine Consull of Rome, which properlie were made of very thinne and cleare horne. Some write that bées are also engendred and bredde monstrously, and that contrary to nature, without the mutual coniunction. if that a whole calfe be buried in the earth, & their lie rotting whiles the wind blow out of the west, for by that meanes as writeth Maro, doth the same breed bees. And not vnlike to this doth Cornelius Agrippa, in his first booke de Occulto Philosophia, and Hiero. Cardanus in his 9 booke of subtilties, write, that of a rotten horse do waspes procéd: of an Asse, Humble bées: of a Mule, Hornets, of the hair of a woman (hauing then her monthly courses) serpents and of Creuisses (the shels plucked off) Scorpions.

Of

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Droane Bees. Cap. 4.

THe Drone Bees (as writeth Pliny) are vnperfect Bees, without sting, and the least wearie, yet bee they verie heauy of body, and slow in doing their businesse: they also doe the seruices and trauels of the true Bees, although the right and perfect Bees doe rule and gouerne them, yea & put them formost in their labours, so that if they happen to bee slow in their doings, then do the right bees punish them without pitty. Also these do helpe the right Bees, so well in their works as in their breeding, for that the multitude of them, cause the more heat and warmth together. And how much the greater the multitude of them shalbe, so much more wil the increase come of the swarm. When the hony wareth ripe, then ar the Drone Bees driuen forth, and the kind also of these are onely seene abroad in the Spring time.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue any bloud in them. Cap. 5.

NOw some affirm, that the clouen beasts draw no breth, in that they haue not the fan of the heart, which is the lights or lungs, for as they write, nothing without them can breath. But Aristotle writeth, that the same is possible among Bees, hauing the sting although they haue no blader) to breath by their sting. And the Bees haue no blod, because they haue neither heart nor lungs: yet Pliny affirmeth, that nothing done by nature may bee thought or iudged incredible. for the same is fully perswaded in wise men, that Bees haue a certaine liuely moisture, like as the Cuttle in the sea, which hath a kind of Inke in it, and is as the iuice of it, with the which the Diers (at this day) do make their purple colour.

Of the great vtilitie and profite of Bees vnto mans vse. Cap. 6.

A Great profit riseth by bees, if they be set in a conuenient and fit place, and that both carefully & wisely guided as Pliny writeth in his 11. booke, where he willeth, that of all other clouen beasts, the bees are principally to be cherished, because to mans vse they gather a subtile and wholsome iuice, being

being very sweet, and besides they frame (by a marueilous skil and cunning) their cotages of wax vnto mans vse, that no worke-man (be he neuer so ingenious) can doe the like. The profit also comming by them in short time, if the weather hindereth not, is so great, that they increase in a short time into many swarmes, which swarmes againe increase others, so that the first swarmes increased, they especially thrust foorth from them in the moneth of May or June, by which meanes they cause a great increase of them. As Varro affirmeth the same of two heade Gentlemen in Spaine, which onely by the meanes of their bees, gained yearlie ten thousand pound (but I rather thinke fiue thousand pound, which also is very much.) And heere is to be noted, that the swarmes of fiue yeares olde, do seldome encrease after other swarmes of themselues, although in wax they giue a great yeld and gaine to the owners.

Of the great care and diligence of the Bees. Cap. 7.

CErtaine Bees, as the skilfull practisers doe write, stand in the day time at the mouthes of the hiues, diligentlie loking to their busines, like warders placed at the gates of a Castle, that they may so defend in safegard whome they will within. In the night time they settle themselues to rest vnto the morning, vntill one of them by humming twice or thrise about, doth so stirre them forward to fly out after the other. For if they happen to keep themselues in the morning within the hiues, then dooth the same declare a tempest to ensue that day. But being a cleare and faire morning, then do they flie forth, and returne againe to their hiues, laden with the substance of the floures on their legs for their businesse, and this especiallie do the yonger bees, so that the other bees besides do either cary the water in their bils, or on the soft mossines of the whole body. The elder bees remaining still within, do also follow their busines, in diligently laying vp, & aptly dressing the same, as they would dispose their kindly fode. Such as be sluggish and not labouring they diligently note, which for their sluggishnes they biterly punish to death. And flying abroad in a mightie wind, they marueilously stay and

guide themselues, by waying their bodyes downe with little stones, caried in their legges. They at the euening comming to rest, doe make lesse and lesse noise in the hiue, vntill one of them flieth about, which by a like order as he moued them forward in the morning, euen so by the same noyse and humming, doth he procure them to take their rest, and to be all silent within the hiue. If the Bees happen to scatter in their flying abroad, then do they call and gather them into a swarme, by the help of making a shril sound, either with pan, bason or some loud cimbal. They also follow their king whither soeuer he taketh his flight, who being wearie, and not further able to flie, they carrie him among them.

Wherfore that the king may not often attempt forth with the swarm for feare of losing them, the skilful practisers wil, the winges of the king be broken off: which feeling him-selfe thus depriued of his wings, wil not after atempt to flie forth of his bounds, but remaining stil within, will cause the other Bees to abide continually with him, not leauing the hiue at any time after. They also haue counsels priuily, and rulers among them. And as Aristotle declareth the Bees to be the cleanliest among all other beastes, because in flying abroade they shed their dung from them, least any sauour or stinke of their dung be felt in their cottages or holes. If these wante hony at any time, then do they either kill or driue quite away the drone Bees.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the King of Bees, and of the obedience which they vse to him. Cap. 8.

NAture hath not onely comitted her lawes to bookes, the which men may learne by, but hath especially set forth conditions & properties, as for an example of the like by the Bees, whose kings for dout of reuenging, haue by the prouidence of nature no stinges: wherby is to be vnderstood, that kings ruling in power, through the lacke of their stings, may be by that meanes the slower to hurt and offer reuengement. Yet some affirme the kings to haue stings, but they suppose them not to vse their stings. And of this Pliny maketh a dout whether the king be armed as other Bees, or lacketh a sting.

Which

Which Columella putteth out of dout, writing of the king that he hath no sting, vnles any perhaps think that big head (as it were) which the king carieth in his belly to be his sting with the which they vse at no time to sting or hurt any body. This king onely doth Bées reuerence and honour, in such sorte, that anye of them is obedient and very readie to doe whatsoeuer he assigneth them vnto. Also this obedience and seruice which they vse to their king, they do not the same for feare of punishment, but onely of a loue which they owe vnto him. They punnish one another in such sorte, that after their kings be lost, they dye forthwith. Aristotle writeth of two maner of kings, the one (as he affirmeth) to be red, which he iudgeth the better: the other king blacke of colour, which he confesseth to be lesser of body: yet howsoeuer the kings be, they are notwithstanding farre bigger of body then the hony Bées, and haue a brighter & goodlier head then the other Bées, yet shorter wings. So that their king created among thē, goeth not any time forth of the hiue, without the whole swarme followe him. The king flying forth of the hiue at any time, the other follow him, in such sort that each couet to flie next him, and ioyeth to be séene of the king in office: and wher soeuer the king setleth or resteth him, there be other bées placed like strong holds or castles about him. About the king also be placed certain rulers, which wait vpon him by daily authoritie. If any hapneth (as writeth Pliny) to breake off the kings right wing, then frō the king will not the swarm after departe, as the like was rehearsed before. Besides these, the bées haue a marueilous order among them: if their king happen to die, they will bitterly mourne for his death, and for the lacke of an other, as such which cannot be guyded and ruled without a king among them, and this they be in continuall mourning: So that (for the time) they carry no foode into their hiues, nor flye forth, but with a sad bewayling and humming after their king, they heape thicke togither about the deade body, and vnlesse an other king encreaseth by little and little among them, they dye with hunger. Their king laboureth not, but as the other flye forth, bee in the

meane time (as an erhorter) moueth and encourageth forwarde euerye one to his woorke, by his flying about in the hiue.

What kind of Bees are best, and rather to be chosen. Cap. 9.

In this point, & for true knowledge of these, doth M. Varro describe those bees to be best which bee small of bodie, and diuers and round, because they be earnest in labor, and make a thin hony, and better indure labour, and gather their hony on hils: but the worser bees gather their hony of the garden floures only, which be somwhat long of body, like to wasps. Virgil doth especially commend the small bees, being somewhat long, light, and cleanly in their businesse, and glistering like gold: and the greater and rounder Bee is discommended of al writers. Although the fierce bees are very il, yet is their vrefulnes a note of the better bees, which may easily bee appeased by the daily haunting among them: for if the keepers doe often handle the hiues, then doe they become gentle in short time. The bees also indure, if they be diligently looked vnto, for the space of ten yeares, & beyond this age no swarm can passe, although the keepers supply the hiues yearly with yong bees in the stead of the old dead: for in the tenth yeare, in a maner, by the generall death of them, the vniuersal kind of the whole hiue is then consumed. And therefore, that this may not happen through all the hiues in that place, you must alwaies increase your hiues with yong bees, which diligently hiue in the spring time, or beginning of Sommer, when as the swarmes be first and new thrust forth of the hiues: & so may the number of your hiues be encreased. Again, some write, that in the countrey of Pontus, the best bees be white, because they giue their yeld of hony twice in a moneth. And Guilielmus de Conchis affirmeth, the best bees to bee about Thermedoone in Capadocia, abiding alwaies in the earth, for that those doe build and make a triple yeeld of ware, and giue also most aboundance of honny. The aforesaid Varro affirmeth, those bees to be in health, which often keepe and be in swarme together, that be cleanly, and can do their busines and woorke alike, and that quicke and light in the same,

being

beeing neither hairy, nor foule of body, or appearing dusky, such also as bee not ouer-cleane of body, nor that out of any of their cotages no dead bees bee carried, but the contrary to be both euill and vnprofitable. Palladius declareth, that the best bees may be known by the fulnes and emptines of their vessels, for if the hiues be full, then those bees doth bee best commend: if the hiues bee nothing so full stuffed, those bees doth be gretly disallow: and he also praiseth those bées which excelleth or passeth other in the loudnes of humming, or doe abound in the great haunt of the swarme, not brought to the hiues from far places, so that there may be such agreement, that they bee not after feared away with the newnes of the aire and place.

Where the Hiues of bees ought especiallie to be placed. Cap. 10.

ARistotle willeth the hiues of bées in the winter time to be placed in a warme place, and in the hot season of sommer in a cold place. Palladius Rutilius in his first book of husbandry teacheth, that the fittest place for bees, is that which is in a Garden, not far, or rather nére to the owners house, which by that meanes sufferth not the windes, nor the accesse of theeues or beasts: which also nourisheth trees growing of the Northside of the place, the better to defend the cold aire from them, and cleare springs or faire riuer water running by.

Columella willeth the hiues to be set open towardes the South, far from noise and haunt of people or beasts, neither in a hot nor cold place, for either of these do molest and harme the bees. Also that the hiues stand in the bottome of a valley, or if not so possible, then placed neare to the valley, the better and easier for the bees to bring their food gathered to their hiues, and in any case far from stinking puddles, ditches, dung-heapes, and such like filthy stinckes, which greatly annoy and endamage the bees being neere hand to their hiues. M. Varro writing in his second booke vnto a huswife of the Country, willeth also to set the hiues close to her house and vnder some shed, and that far from the noise of foxes,

which is ment from a groue or wood, least through the wood or groue nær hand, the same may giue a sounding noise, like to that which men commonly name the Eccho, which sound in verie deed the bees do greatly hate. Virgill willeth bushy trées to be planted and stand right before their hiues, like as the Pear-tree is, the Peach-tree, the Oak-tree, many kinds of Apple-trees, the Birch tree, Holly tree, the Iuy tree also. not allowed for their goodnes, but because the same giueth out much hony, & all other trees which beare no bitter flowers. And he willeth these plants and hearbes to grow neere hand, as the Rosemary, the red and damaske rose, the white Lilly, the Violets, the Flour-deluce, the Organy, the Time, the running Time, the Sauery, swæt Mariorame, the Saffron floure, which coloureth the hony & maketh it smel swæt. the beane floures, the French beane floures, the Pellilot floures, the hearbe Balme, the white Poppy flours, the Betony floures, the borage and buglosse floures, and many other swæt and wholsome floures not heere named. But the Bore tree, the Mallicke tree, the Deg or Catten tree, or as some suppose the long and high cheritræ, they greatly hate, for that talking of the floures of any of these, they die forthwith. Marro willeth standing waters to be neer their hiues, and so shallow, that small stones throwne into them, may appear aboue the water, to serue in stead of bridges for their often recourse vnto them, and that they may aptly stretche their wings abroad on the stones at the heat of the sun. The standing for Hiues ought to bee three foot distaunt from the ground, and wittily stopped about with red clay, least vermins and mice creepe into the hiues, and spoyle the honnie combs. The hiues also ought to be set a litle asunder the one from the other, least by loking into them, you shake one another by cleauing together, and so disquiet the bees next to, which feare all manner of shaking, least the same throwe downe their weake works of wax. And the mouthes of the hiues ought to stand somwhat steper then the back part, lest raine beating in, might not lightly run out againe by their entry or hole: for remedy of the which, some make a couer o-

uer

ner their hole, the better to kæp of the foule weather. And no maner of heat so much hurteth them, as doth bitter cold, and for this the fates of hiues ought to be toward the winter rising of the sun, that the bees may so receiue the warme comfort in the morning comming forth, and bee the liuelier: for cold doth cause them to be sluggish, and for that cause their holes ought to be very narrow, that as little cold as it possible may enter into them, and so narrow made that the bees within may receiue the entry but of one bee at once: for by that meanes can neither the Bætill, butterflie, nor great moth enter to annoy them. Besides, for their often recourse home, Marro willeth to make two or three commings into the hiue, somwhat distant asunder.

What things bees do chiefly abhor, or greatly hate Cap. 11.

TO bees, is that (named the Eccho) vngratfull or much displeasing, which as Pliny writeth, doth greatly fear them, through the strange sound rebounding againe, and the mist also doth much molest & trouble them: besides, the spinner through her web hanging downe before the hiue, and the sluggish butterflie (which Pliny nameth dishonorable) are 2. wates pestiferous, as the one when he spoileth the ware, and dungeth within the hiue: and the other breeding magots or litle wormes within the combs. They greatly hate oile, like as al the kinds of other bees do, and a stinking sauour, which euidently apeareth by that kind of hearbe named mugwort, which they especially hate, because the same is of a straunge stincke to them. The hornets also of the like sort creatt, but baser of kinde, they greatly feare, for that to the hornets the hony bees are a speciall food: also they be meat to swallowes, to sparrows, and to all other small birds.

The frogs also they do greatly fear, which only lie in wait for them, both in Marishes, running springs, shallow waters, and litle ditches: and likewise the todes doe lie in wait for the bees, which destroy many of them. And the sheepe do greatly trouble the Honnie bees, if so be they happen to fall or light into the wooll of their backes, out of which they cannot easily wind or get themselues againe.

And

And if any happen to boyle or seeth Riuer Creuisses (or Sea Crabs) neare to the Hiues, and that the bees feele the sauour thereof, they die forthwith.

By what signes men may know when the hony bees are diseased, and how men may cure them. Cap. 12.

THis is a special argument and note that bees are diseased, if that they fly scattering in the swarme, if they kep not their proper colour, but bee (as it were) of a strange and contrary colour, if they also are ouer leane, if they appeare dusty and hairy, and that out of their cotages be dead Bees caried thence. When all these notes and signes are espied in the bees it is then high time to seeke remedy for them, least helpe (by longer running) be sought too late. Therfore Palladius willeth to minister the kernels of Pomegranets, brused and mixed with sweet and pleasaunt wine, and the same powred into channels or gutters of halfe canes, set neere to the mouthes of hiues: or hony with Rose leaues well beaten together, and so ministred to them: or the berries of the Sarnice tree brused, and mixed with honny, and for lacke of these helpes, a man may make a smoake of drie Ore or cow dung, which smoake much delighteth and comforteth them, so that the same bee often vsed vnto Harueft. But if through the Waggots or little wormes of butterflies the bees be diseased Rutilius then iudgeth it best, to set a brazen Candlesticke, or such like vessell, with light burning in it at Euening within the hiue, that to the same light (the butterflies gathering, and flying about) may so fall downe into it, and be destroyed.

Aristomachus writeth, that the diseased bees may be recouered in this maner, if that all the corrupt combe within the hiue be taken forth, and fresh food anew put in for the whole, and the hiue after smoaked within. Also he affirmeth, that Rosemary sodden with water and hony together, and being cold poured into halfe canes or elder sticks made hollow like gutters, and the same set by the mouthes of the hiues, for the bees to drinke on, doth recouer the bees againe. Hyginius affirmeth, that either ore or mans vrine set in like manner (as

aboue

aboue-said) by the mouthes of the hiues, doth also recouer the diseased bees. Now al these must the keper of the bees do, which is both sober and chaste, and feedeth not vpon sowre meates, nor filthy or strong of sauour, nor any salt meats.

What maner of person the keeper of Bees ought to be. C. 13.

THe bees, for that they much abhorre al filthy stinks and smels, Palladius willeth the keper of them to eschew diligently al strong and ill smelling sauours, one also that delighteth to bee chast of body, and free from filthines, among st these not breathing sowrly, or of a stinking breath, not sweating, nor sauoring of sweat, not one besides of wicked conditions, or such a person as hãding among the sight of the bees, doth not ernestly moue and procure them to fly to him, or as one stinged indeuoureth to defend himselfe from them: but rather, as a flatterer among his acquaintance and children, hath learned to intreat and please the bees by a more gentle maner. Hee also which mindeth to haue in a readines, the hiues to his vse, in which he may receiue foorthwith the rude youth of the swarmes, for forthwith if they be not diligently preserued, they fly quite away at the ful heat of the sun. But how these hiues ought aptly to be prepared, shall herafter be taught in the sixteenth Chapter. If the Dorre bees be ouer many in the hiue, and that you would gladly rid them forth, then do on this maner: first take and plucke off the wings of of one of those Dor bees, and put into the hiue, and incontinent the hony bees espying the same, wil fall vpon the other Dorre bees, and doth kil and driue them quite away.

By what subtile meanes, the swarmes beeing come foorth, may be preserued from flying quite away. Cap. 14.

PAlladius in his second booke writeth, that the swarms of the hony bees fly away especially in the moneth of June: but with vs the same oftner happeneth in the moneth of May, as hath beene noted by sundry diuers times, especially if the yong bees be sound and harty within the hiues. Therefor the keper must diligently loke to the hiues, and at no time be absent, especially when the yong bees increase and abound in the hiues, for if they be not then carefully loked vnto, and

staied by the diligence of the keeper, they all flie quite away. For such is the nature and property of the bees, that assone as the swarme of the yong bees are bred with the kings, and that they be strong & able to fly away, then as disdaining the swarms of the old bées, they seek the more gouernment. For they be such liuing things as delight to rule alone, not seking aide or counsel of the elder bées: and therfore do ỳ new kings fly forth with the yong swarms following them, which for a day or two before their flying, remaine heaping togither before the mouths of the hiues and right vnder ỳ hiues, so that by their cõming forth, & heaping in such order, they properly showe the desire of a new place, and be as yet contented to remain therabout, if the keper prouide for them a fit place. But if they be not diligently regarded, then (as it were by an iniury receiued) they seek a new place. To preuent this, let the keeper loke circumspectly to the hiues in the spринge time, about the eight hour of the day (when the swarms are not yet flowen away) that he may the diligentlier marke and see the flying out and comming in of the yong bées.

Now the readines of bées in flying away, is knowne two waies. First when for certain daies before, in a maner at the setting of the Sun, they aboundantly gather on a heap right before the mouth of ỳ hiue, like great clusters of grapes, and hang togither one vpon another: the other note is, that whē they be minded within three daies after to flye away, they make as marueilous a noyse and stirring to & fro within the hiues at euening, as souldiers at an alarme within a Castle, which you may easily knowe (this readines of them) if that you lay your eare to each hiue. And when some of the Bées are flowen away, then do those wayle for the others, vntill the whole swarme be come togither. To kéep Bées from flying away, Pliny teacheth in the xj. booke of his Naturall History, that the hiues ought to be noynted about with the iuce of the hearb Balme. Also other affirme, that the swarm doth settle and staye againe, through the onely throwing of fine dust on them, if so be the same be throwen on light, and that ouer the Bées. Some others affirme, that the Bées wilnot

fly away,

fly away, if the dung of a first calfe of any Cow be smeared about the mouths of hiues. Pliny writeth, that by the onely binding ỹ fresh white vine (running in hedges) round about the bodies of hiues, it staieth the swarm from flying away.

Of the Bees newe setled in a swarme togither, and taken or recouered againe. Cap. 15.

WHen the bées are now in a tumult in the aire, by throwing fine earth on high ouer the Bées or ringing a bason or kettle, they be with the shrill sound astonied, that they may the soner settle downe nér the keper, which if the same happen to be on the branch of a trée, or on a graft or yong set, then with a sharp sawe, gently saw that off and lay it on the ground, and spédily set a hiue on the same prepared for that purpose: for by that meanes (without dout) will the whole swarme fly vp to the top & head of the hiue. Yet it often happeneth, that they doe not wholy cleaue on a heap to ỹ branch of a trée, but to the stocke or body of the trée, which to be cut, must be by great force, and so not able to be recouered by this meanes. In such a case the swarme must be quickly swept off, either with the hand, or with a Gose wing, that they may so fall togither into the hiue. If the swarme happen to be clustred togither on the top of a trée, so high that they cannot be climed vnto, to take them downe then, after the shaking of them into the hiue (turned vp) either with a pole, or high forke, the hiue must spédely be turned downe to the earth. And if they be but thus taken or recouered, yet if the king shall be still in the hiue, then doth the swarme flie in againe: where if he remaine not, then will none of the swarme abide in the hiue, but flie forth with into the former place. Wherefore that they may be moued to abide, you must then sprincle the hiue with water and hony together, and couer the same within with grene Nettles, or rather grene Fennell, or some such sweete herbe, annointed a litle with honie, and after set at the Euening in their proper place. For the hiue in the day time, after the recouering thus of the Bées, may not be stirred vntill the Euening, that the Bées so quietly resting all that night, may in the morning easily goe forth,

but for thée dais together (in a maner) must the képer daily looke whether the swarme keepeth below in the hiue, for if it doth, then are the bees purposed to fly away. And if none of all these remedies may yet moue the bees to stay and tarie in the hiue, then besmoke the hiue with flaxe, and they will after enter in and abide in the Hiue: which so staying in the hiues, set at the euening in his proper place. Here learne a farther instruction, that if the swarme of bées cannot be gathered and recouered togither al at one time, then may you gather the swarme at two or more times together, and alwaies put eth part gathered vnder the hiue. If it happeth that you haue gotten the king with a part of the swarme, then wil all the others sone come to the hiue (without further trauel) of their own accord. If the bees bee also entred into the hollowe of a tree, then to the hole which they vse to go in and out at (as their proper doore) set a prepared hiue, and beneath their hole, neere to the rote and bottome of the hollow (as you can gesse) bore another big hole, that ye may wel put in a smoke of brimstone to them, which may so cause all the bees to fly out at their hole into the hiue, set ouer the mouth of it: for no better deuice or inuention can bee made in this matter, than by such a smoke made. If the same hollow tree be so thin, that it may easily be sawed a sunder, then with a sharpe sawlet the hollow part be cut asunder, both aboue and beneath, and after couering it with a cleane sheet, carry the swarme home, which at euening couer with a new hiue, sprinckled with water and hony mixed together. For so they will tarry the willinglier, beeing all shaken forth of the bodie of the tree, and couered with the hiue. Besides, the hearbe Mugwort (which the bées by a natural hatred do abhorre) doth chase them with the onely smell from place to place.

Which are the best and fittest Hiues for the Homie Bees. Cap. 16.

PAlladius writeth, that the best hiues bee those, which bee made of the barkes and light corkes of trées, because they be neither too cold in the winter time, nor too hot in the Sommer.

mer. And of this, those hiues which be wrought and made of the small Osier or willow tree, or of the vine stickes knit together, or canes cleft in the midst (which be of like condition to the barke) wrought close together, and stopped close about with flocks and clay tempered together with water and salt, may aptly serue if you wil. But if neither of those fashioned hiues like you, then may you make the hiues of the wood of a hollow tree, or of light boards made square, and stouping somwhat afore. The worst hiues be those which bee made of turfes, or earth, because they be ouer hot in the sommer, and ouer cold in the winter. There be other two kinds of hiues, as the one made of dry hard cow dung, and the other of tiles, Of which the one doth Celsus rightly condemne, because the same is so lightly burned: and the other he alloweth, although he dissembleth the special commodity of it, because the same, if need requireth, cannot easily be remoued and caried into another place.

And among these, I suppose our forme of Hiues heere in England, are not altogither to be disallowed, although they be in like daunger to bee easily burned, as the other hiues aboue taught, in that they be made with straw. But to bee briefe, for a great swarme you ought to haue in a readines a great hiue, and for a small swarme a little hiue. And the hiue also ought to bee a foot and a halfe, or two foot high, and in breadth aboue two foot and a halfe, or somewhat larger: hauing besides two very small and narrow holes, somwhat asunder, and so litle ought the mouths to be, that neither beetle, butterfly, great moth, humblebees, Euet, nor mouse may enter in, to spoile the houy combes. Some suppose, or rather affirme of experience, that the bees are delighted with this closenes, in that they more ioy to do their works and busines in the darke, than otherwise.

Of the cleanlinesse and sweetnesse of the keeper of bees, and how Hiues ought to be fenced about, and prepared within Cap. 17.

The keeper of bees, which mindeth to handle and loke into hiues, ought the day before to refraine the veneriall Act,

not a person fearefull, nor comming to the hiue with vnwashed hands and face: and one that ought to refraine in a maner from all smelling meats, poudered meats, fried meats, and all other meats that doe stincke, like as the Leekes, the Onions, the garlike, and such like, which the bees greatlie abhorre besides, to be then swæt of body, cleanly in apparel, minding to come vnto their hiues, for in all cleanlines and swætnes the bees are much delighted. Now thus prepared, and in a readines, vppon the hiues first of the bees, about the 8. or 10. day of April, being then a cleare and warm day, and purge the hiues of al such filth which is gathered in them all the winter before, like as Spiders webs, which ought especially to be wiped away, because they corrupt the combs: not with hands, but with a gose wing, the same ought to be done. After that, the hiue ought to be smoked with Ore or cow dung, for in that (as it were by an affinity of the kinde) do the bees greatly delight. The litle wormes also, which some name Waggots, that bred in the combes through the blowing of the butterflies, and also the butterflies ought to be killed and purged out of the hiue. If the combes happen to fall through infection or corruption in them, then make a smoke with the dry dung and marow of an ore or cow, mixt together, that the sauour may go vp to them, which for that time will cure the weake combes, strengthen the bees, and cause them to worke the luckier afterward. And from the beginning of May, vnto the last of June, the hiues ought diligently to be loked vnto, that the yong swarms fly not away. Also from the tenth of June, vnto the tenth of August, the hiues ought to be opened now and then, and to bee smoaked with such like as afore is taught. Which although it be grieuous for the time to bées, yet the same is very profitable, and strengtheneth them. And from the beginning of the Dogge daies, vnto the eightenth of September, ought the bees to bee carefully looked vnto, and defended from the violence of the hornet bees, which often wait before the mouthes of the hiues, to set vpon and eat the hony bees. Now the keeper in a faire Sunny day, ought to cleanse the hiues of all manner

ner annoyances as before is taught, and diligently to stoppe the chinckes and clefts about, sauing the mouthes of the Hiues, with Oxe dung and clay mixed together. And this ought to be done for two or three daies before the change of the Moone, the better to defend the butterflie & others from creeping in. The hiues besides ought to haue two big sticks cleane scraped, and running a crosse from side to side, and sprinckled round about within with sweete and pleasaunt wine, or else the sticks to be hard rubbed ouer with the grẽn branches of Fenell, or other sweet smelling hearbs, or with a little hony and leaues of the Peare tree together, or with the branches of the hearb Time flouring, or Sauery, or maiorame, or the hearbe Balme and hony together. Some annoint the sticks and hiue within with sweet Creame of new Cow milk, or with water and hony soden together, and that sprinckled about within the hiue, that the Bees may be the rather and sooner mooued to tarrie and dwell still in their Hiues.

How bees lacking hony, may bee fed in that present need. Cap. 18.

BEcause the boisterousnesse of the aire doth sometime constrain the bees to abide in their hiues, and that they may not onely feed of honny, but at the rising of the constellation, (named Vergiliæ) they may bee fed and cherished, and the same done in this manner without great cost. At first, if you take the number of ten figs, seething them in fiue pintes of faire Conduit or spring water, vnto a pint wasted, which after set on one side of the hiue within, laying manye small sticks a crosse ouer the Licour, that those may serue instead of bridges, the apter for them to drinke of the Licour without drowning in the same. Others will to seeth honny and water together, and the same to be poured into dishes set at the one side of the hiue, in the which they wil to put fine carded wool, that the bees may the better drinke now and then, and be not cloyed with too much drinking of the licor, by lighting into it. Others take figs and raisons, beating them together, & after boiling them in the sweet licour named Cuyte,

they

they powr into dishes, couering the same with oaten straws a crosse. Others also will to take a little hony, putting into the same a few Date cornes, that the bees lighting on them, may so keepe their wings from wetting in the licour. Now all these meanes may well suffice to cherish and feed the bees in the winter time, lacking then food, being set neere vnto the mouthes of the hiues. So that if a longer honger oppresseth them then with the hiues fall by the entring in, set little gutters made of halfe canes, or great elder sticks cleft, into the which poure of the sweete licours aboue taught, for by that meanes may they be well recouered and strengthened in the deepe of winter, when their food faileth them. Some will to put fresh birds cleane drawn, or the flesh of a Hen finely shred into hiues, for the bees to feed and sucke vpon in the deepe of winter, and fine feathers also they will to put into the hiue, that they maye giue then a warmth vnto the Bees lying in them. And others also will to put the meat of rosted chikens into their hiues to feede and sucke vpon, and not the boanes withal, least the sauour of the bones after the meat eaten of, might annoy the bees by lying still in the hiues, in that they so greatly abhorre all sowre and stincking sauors. Also these kinds of flesh ordered (as aboue said) may wel serue bees in a drie sommer, when as the most floures are then faded or quite gone away. Heere note, that in the spring and sommer time, the Bee hiues ought to be loked vnto thrice in the moneth gently smoking the bees, to cleanse the hiue of al maner of filth, and to sweepe forth the wormes. And Menecrates willeth the keeper of bees to kil the king black of colour, which by his malice disquieteth the other king, and corrupteth the hiue, in that he flieth out alone, or with a company of the bees following: so by that means (as Virgil writeth) shal the batle of bees be staied.

Palladius writeth, that the swarmes bee increased in the moneth of May, and that in the outmost sides of the combes be the drone bees bred, which ought to be killed, in that those doe much disquiet the rest of the swarme. The Butterflies also doe abound, which hee willeth diligently to kill, for

their

their great annoyaunce vnto the Honnie Bees.

About the beginning of November ought the hiues then to bee cleared of their filth, so that all the winter following they may neither bee remooued nor opened: And this may not bee doone but in a warme Sunnie day. The combes may not bee touched with hands, but with the feathers of a stiffe Goose wing, or such bigge foule. After that to stop the chinckes round about with Dre dung and claye finelie laboured together, and to lay straw thicke ouer the tops of the hiues, the better to defend the Bées from the colde and tempests.

How the dead Bees may be restored to life againe. Cap. 19.

THe képer of bees ought to fore-sée and take héed, that the Bees perishe not through ouer great heat, or ouer mightie colde. If at any time by a sodaine showre in the séeking for food, bees happen to be beaten down, or nipped with a sodaine colde (which seldome so commeth to passe, that the hony bees are so deciued) that harmed with the drops, they lie groueling and flat vppon the earth, as dead in a manner, then gather such bees together, putting them into some vessell for the nonce, which after set in a warme Chamber or Parlour, and couer warme imbers (being somewhat more then hot) on the Bees, which gently shake with the Ashes, but in such sort that you touche them not with your hand: And setting the Bees in the Sunne, and neare vnto their Hiues, they will after recouer and flie againe into their cotages.

Of the battle that bees haue sometime amongst themselues. Cap. 20.

VErgill writeth, that bées sometimes minding to fight, do hastily burst out of the hiues, and (as it were in ciuill batles among themselues) do fight like straungers one against the other, & smite eagerly in their fight one at another, if so be one hiue hath especially 2 kings bred vp in the same, which very wel may be known, when as the bées clustred and heaped together, do represent or represse (as it were) the form of

two beards hanging downe. Now their readines to fight is knowen, when in the aire is heard a great sound and noise among the bees, like to the manner of trumpets whiles they fiercely and cruelly fight togither among themselues, and in this battle they glitter with their wings, sharpen the stings with their beakes, beare foorth their breasts, and about the king they gather and swarme: so that they shout with great noise, flying and dashing together, and that in heaps & round companies mixed or ioyned together, and great is the noyse made among them. And to be short, in this strong and eager battle, many of them fall headlong downe, and that thicker then haile stones to the ground.

The kings themselues in the meane time flying in the midle fronts, do fight with a fierce courage within themselues, and they are also seen to flie hither and thither among thick heaps and swarms of the bees (like as valiant Captains are wont to do in the time of a battle) with their glittring wings and beakes, beating downe of the swarmes, here and there, and on each side of them of both parts: so that of themselues not giuing ouer this eager battle, vntill the one part forced to turne the backe to the other, doe fly away with expedition.

Therefore that this doubtfull battle in the meane time may be ceased and quieted betwéen them: the wise practisers wil that the keeper of bées doe stay and appease this broile of them, by the casting of fine earth ouer the bées, while they be thus fighting, which (as the wise affirme) of experience doth forth-with pacifie the great stomackes and courages of both parts. But if this auaileth not, then with hony and water sodden together, or raisons in like order, or with any swéete licour sprinckled on them, is their fury appeased, which doth (as it were) with the pleasant swéetnes, quiet the irefulnesse of the warriours, and with the same in this controuersie they are marueilously appeased. If neither of these remedies do yet preuaile, then let the keeper marke diligently those bees which fight in the front, and be most eager Captaines, that hee may kill them with expedition, for by that meanes, and

with

with the other remedies aboue taught, may the battles and fight of the warriours be throughly ceased.

Now after the bées are thus quieted, and the swarm setled round on some grén bow next hand, then mark diligentlie whether the whole swarme hangeth downe like a cluster of grapes, which so seeing, declareth there to bee either one king or two, by good agreament reconciled, which let alone on such wise, vntill they flie backe vnto their proper home. But if the swarme shalbe deuided into two or manye round clusters, then iudge that there be yet many Captains left, & that their ire is not ceased, and in those parts where you especially se the bées to cluster most thicke and round togither, there diligently séeke out the captains, yet annoint your hand before with the iuice of the hearbe Baulme, that touching or handling the bees, they flie not hither & thither, after which put in your fingers gently, and seuering the bees asunder, seeke diligently among them, vntill you find out the author and procurer of the battle, which you ought likewise to kill. Virgil writeth, that the kings somtimes flie forth for a vain delight, to sport them flying in the air, which you may easily stay and let, if that you plucke of the kings wings, that he cannot afterward flie.

How bees may be recouered and found againe. Cap. 21.

IF so it happeth, that your bees are flowen away, and that you bee in doubt whether they bee lodged neare hand, or far off, Palladius doth instruct and teach many godly waies to find them againe. First he teacheth to take red lead, or red oker infused in water, or any other colour staining, and to carie the same with you in a little shalow dish, to such a spring or running water as the honny bees haunt, especially in the moneth of Aprill, and there sitting downe, await the comming of the bees to drinke, which after they be come, & there drinking, staine in the meane time such bees with a ruch coloured red at the end, as you may well reteh with the same, sitting yet still, and watching the comming againe of those bees marked to drinke, which if they shortlie returne, then is it an euident note and token, that their lodging and

cotages be neare hand, but if those Bees are long before they returne and come againe to the place, then may you suppose and iudge them to be far of, and the distance you may gesse according to their long tarrying and soone comming againe. That you may easilie finde the place where the Bees lodge, whether the same be farre or neare hand, Palladius teacheth the same wittily in this maner.

First he willeth to take one whole ioynt of a big cane or Elder sticke, stopped at the one end, and the other end left open to annoint within with a little hony, which lay neare to that spring or running water, that the bees daily haunt vnto. Now when the Bees resort to the same, and that certaine be entred within the quill, through the sauour thereof, then stop the hole with your thumbe, letting one of the Bees afterward to flie forth, which diligently mark, and follow that way it flieth, for it will shew you part of the way vnto their home: and after you can see the same no further, then quickly set forth another Bee, whose flight in like manner marke and follow after, for that it may also shew part of the way to their home: And so let flie the Bees by one and one vntill they bring you vnto the place of the swarme. Nowe if the same place be deepe in the earth, then with a smoake made either of dry Flaxe or Brimstone, driue the Bees out, and when the swarme is come forth, then ring on a Basen or shrill pan, for being by and by feared with the shrill sound of the same, the swarm either lighteth on a yong tree, or on the opener bow of a big tree, which so fould out, couer ouer with a hiue prepared for the nonce. But if the swarme be placed in the hollow of a tree, and hauing boughs, or in the stocke of the same tree, then with a very sharpe saw (if the meanes of the same wil giue leaue) cut it asunder: and in such sort, that the part empty aboue the Bees be first cut, and the part beneath, in which it semeth the Bees to be lodged, to be likewise cut asunder, and the stocke thus cut asunder at both the ends, couer with a faire sheet, least any lagge clifts appeare after the cutting, which also annoint with hony, for the better staying in of the Bees, and after carry the same home,

which

which place by your other hiues, making small holes in the same, for their flying in and out (as afore was taught) in the ordering of the other hiues. But it behoueth the diligent searcher, to chose the morning times for the finding out of Bees, whereby you may haue the space and liberty of the day before you to find out their resort: For by looking late after them, it falleth out, although the Bees are near hand, yet because they haue then doone their busie and carefull labour, they fly no longer abroad to seeke food, nor yet resort to drinke: through which it so commeth to passe, that the searcher after Bees knoweth not then how neare, or far off the swarme is from the spring or running water. Some take the iuice of the herbe Balme in the spring time, and anoint the same round about the hiue, whereby the sauour of the iuice may cleane and abide on the vessell, which afterward being faire within, sprinkle about with a little hony, setting the same hiue downe neare to the wood or groue of trées fast by that spring of water running by it, and after the same be filled with a swarme, carry it gently home. Yet doth not this like, but in such places where the swarmes of Bees doe abound, for that oftentimes it so happeneth, that vnlesse the Hiues be daily watched, such as go by doe take them away. But to loose some Hiues, greatly hindereth not, so that you maye in the meane whiles enioye one or two of the full.

Now hitherto hath bene sufficiently taught such remedies and helpes, as necessarilye serue to the taking and recouering of Bees lost, and otherwise to finde out most straunge swarmes.

That Bees sting no person comming neere their Hiues. Cap. 21.

PLinie in his 20. booke writeth, that the herb Sperage bruised and mixed with oyle, and one being annointed with the same, doeth defend him from being stinged by comming nigh to their Hiues. And in his 18 booke he also writeth, that if any man happen to be stinged by a scorpion, that he shall neuer after be stinged of any bee: but yet being sting-

ed, he teacheth to drinke the iuice of hearbe grace and Rew, mixed with wine, and to lay the leaues also in plaister fourme on the stinged place. In the xv. booke he writeth, that Bees stings are by nature venemous, against the which he teacheth to take and vse the iuice of Mallows, or the iuice of Ivy leaues, and to annoint either of the two on the stinged places, as a soueraine remedie. And in the xviii. booke he teacheth, that wine boyled with Bay leaues, and after drunke, is a very good remedy. In the xviiii. booke he teacheth, to take a drop of that molten, which the honny bees make at the entry of the hiue, to bee a like remedie as the water Bezoar to bee vsed against venemous bites. Auicen in his second rule teacheth, that the decoction of the March Mallows, with vineger or wine, and the same annointed on stinged places, to be a perfect remedy: which also in his fourth rule affirmeth, that the hony bees haue like dispositions vnto the waspe, saving that they leaue their stings behind them: wherefore for remedy of the wasps, you may vse those which we haue afore taught against the stings of bees.

When and how the Hiues ought to bee gelded. Cap. 23.

PAlladius Rutilius in his first book teacheth, that the hiues of bees ought not to bee gelded, before you will consider and see whether they bee ripe, vnto the comming of the true hony, which in a maner (as hee teacheth) commeth to vse in the moneth of June, or as others affirme, in the ende of August, vnto the middle of September.

Now there be certaine notes and tokens, by which we try and find out the ripenes of them, which be these. First, if the hiues be full, then do the hony bees driue forth the idle drone Bees out of the hiues, and there is also heard within a small or shrill humming of the bees, for that the emptie cottages of the combes (as it were hollowe buildinges) doe receiue a sound and noyse procured then bigger, so that when there is herd a big and hoarse sound of the humming of them, then is it not yet mete to geld the combes. Varro writeth, that it is then time to geld hiues, when as you see within, that the

the

the bées hang clustering round, and that the holes of the hony combes be couered ouer (as it were) with thin cauls, for then be they ful of hony. Now the day of gelding the hiues, ought to be done timly in the morning, when as the bees are astonied through the colde aire, and not done in the heate of the day, when they bee procured to flie forth of the hiues, and being then very angrie, to sting those persons which come to the Hiues. The manner of gelding of the Hiues is after this wise: First, stoppe the holes of the Hiues, that the bees passe not forth, with grasse or some other hearbe, after that put vnder fine linen rags or straw, making a litle smoke with the same, which smoke so flying vp, causeth the bees after to breake and leaue their clustring together.

After these, with two instruments or toles of yron (made for the only purpose) of a foot and a halfe long, or rather somwhat longer, of which the one ought to be a long knife, and broad of either side the edge, and hauing a crooked file on the one end, the other at the beginning plaine, and verie sharpe, whereby with this the combs may the readier and quicklier be cut downe, and with the other scraped cleane: and whatsoeuer filth falleth of, or awe away, and throwe aside. But where the hiue of the hinder part, or part behinde, shall haue no voyde place emptie, then make a smoke (as Varro commaundeth) with Galbanum, and dry Ore dung, which ought to be made in an earthen fuming pan, filled with quick coles, or a pan of earth with a narrow mouth, and a handle like to it, so that the one part ought to be sharper or narrower vpward, by which the smoke may passe by the little holes, and the other part where the coles are broader, and with a large mouth of the one side of it, by which the person may blowe the coles. Now such a pot when it is set within the hiue, and the smoke stirred vp vnto the Bees, they by and by vnquieted with the sauour, flie vnto the fore-part of the hiue, and sometimes flie quite out of the hiue, whereby any may looke into the hiue (in a manner) without harme. If there happen to bee two swarmes in one Hiue, then are there also two kinds or formes of honnie combes: For euery

company of Bées in a greement together, dooth fashion and fraime the ware as liketh them best. But all the hony combs being hollow wrought, and a little cleaning vnto the sides of the Hiue, doe hang. Whereby they may not touch a flore or board, for so it causeth the swarmes to fly quite away: and the forme of their ware is such, as the condition of their cottages is. For some bees doe make both square & round spaces, and some long, so that ech frameth (as it were) certaine formes in the combes according to his kind. whereby the hony combes are not found alwaies alike in fashion: but these combs of what forme soeuer they bee, are not to bee taken all out of the Hiues. For in the beginning of Haruest, whiles the fields yet flourish, take a fift part of the combes, but after, when Winter is at hand, then leaue a third parte behind.

Palladius willeth the hiues to be gelded in the moneth of October, and that a third part be left behind. Yet consider that if there be store, to make the more, if but a meane, then the halfe part of that leaue for the Winter time: if the cottages appeare but halfe full, then take nothing away. Varro teacheth, that a third part of the combs may be taken away and the other part left for the winter, although the combs be ful of hony: If you feare (saith he) a sharpe winter to folow, then take nothing at all. Of the same minde is the learned Vergil, but the expert practisers of our time in such matters do affirme, that the honnie ought to be taken away but once in the yeere, and this in the end of the moneth of August, vnto the middle of September. But the ware beeing corrupt, then both before, and at any time may be taken foorth of the Hiues.

Also as touching the honnie which the Bees giue, whether you may take away either little or much, must be considered according to the smalnesse or plentifulnesse of that hony being in the hiue. And according to the smalnesse or greatnes also of the swarme to bee nourished, so that aboue the fourth part of the combes may not be taken from any Hiue, yet this order may not be vsed alike in all countries, because

a man must consider the dealing with the hiues, according to the multitude of flours, & plentifulnes of food for the bees. If the waxie combes hanging downe, doe run into a length, then with the same yron toole, which is made like to a knife, being oftentimes dipped in water, that the waxe cleaue not vnto it, nor that the combes remaining may be harmed, and the hiue holden on the one side, cut the combs away. After this, put both your armes into the hiue, gathering together, and taking forth the combes. But if the combes hang ouerthwart in the hiue, then must you vse your scraping yron, that the combs on the further side thrust together, may so be cut away. Also the olde and corrupt combes are to be taken forth, the whole and full of hony to be especially left. And if there be any yong bees in them, those kepe or preserue to increase the swarme in that hiue: after that carry all the store of the honny combes into one place, where as you minde to make your honnie, and stop diligently the sides and edges of the hiues round about, that none of the bees may enter in, which for the honie and waxe taken away, do eagerly seeke after, and finding the same, doe vtterly consume the same if they may. Therefore of the former matters must a smoke be made, and that at the entrie or mouth of the hiues, that the Bees assaying to flie in, may through the smoke bee driuen to flie backe againe. Now after their hiues be gelded, and that anye shall haue ouerthwart and crossed combes at the entrance of the hiue, those then shall be so conuerted, that the parts behind may bee emptied and left voyd for another time. So that when they shall be next gelded, the old combs rather then the new to be taken forth, and the waxe renued, for that the older the waxie combes are, so much the worse they be.

If it happeneth, that the hiue bee so made that the same may not be remoued out of the place, then ought you to geld first the hinder part, and after the fore-part: and this especially ought to be done afore fiue a clocke in the morning, and after nine of the clocke at night, or in the next morrow. Now the bees when they know this, al come to fil the empty place,

so that after they haue repaired and filled the same, and fulfilled all the rest about it, then fly they to the forepart, and do worke in like order. By which wee may euidently learne, that they haue filled the same emptie place also, by their abiding still there. Besides these, as the great plentie of honnie doth cause slugishnes in the bees, euen so doth the much abatment, and exceeding taking away of their hony, both dull the quicknes and diligence of them, and cause them also to be sluggish.

What the honnie is, and how from the hiues the same may be prepared to vse. Cap. 24.

AS wee first gather the honnie from the combes, so doe we the ware, for the comfort of light, and other commodities besides. Now what the honnie is, and howe the same taken from hiues, may be prepared to vse, shall hereafter be taught.

First, the learned Isidore, writeth the honny to be of the dew of some liquid matter, and affirmeth also the same to be found sometimes in the leaues of great Canes. To which in a manner doth Publius Maro agree, in this verse writing, that hitherto the heauenly gifts are of the Aereal honny. Others teach, the honny in India and Arabia, to bee like to salt gathered there on the leaues of trees: others do doubt, whether hony be a sweat from heauen, or a certaine spittle of the starres, or the iuice of the aire purging it selfe. But whatsoeuer substance the same is, yet is it a most sweet, subtile, and healthfull iuice, as Plinie witnesseth, which at the first gathering of it is as cleare water, but after the boiling a while and purging of it selfe, as new wine (after the pressing forth) and doth from the twenteth day after come to a perfectnesse of hony, through the often tempering of it in hot daies, from the beginning of May, vnto the middle of June.

Now the hony is gathered in this maner. First before the hony be pressed out of the combs, must those corrupt combs, hauing red filth, & hauing yong in them (if any such be there) bee pressed out, because they both procure an euill taste, and

with

with that iuice corrupt the hony. These combs bruised together, ought to be put into a clean presse, being yet warme, & new gathered out of the hiues the same day, which let lie there, vntill the hony by little and little be run forth, or rather for the more expedition pressed foorth with a heauy waight, and the same which is then come, is very faire raw hony: After that, the hony with the ware must be boiled together, as hereafter shall be taught.

Now when the combes be thus bruised together, and the yong bées killed and cast forth, then must you make your hony in this maner. As first in the month of September or October, take the heauier and olde hiues, which are of two or three yeares olde, and not hauing bred swarmes in the sommer before: and that ouer-smoke with a flame of straw, drie flare, or yellow brimstone, the hiue being a little whiles holden that the bees may so fly vp to the top of the hiue, or else such as remaine below burne their wings. After that turne downe the head of the hiue on the ground, and with a sharpe knife cut the crossed sticks asunder in the Hiue, or plucke them forth with your hand: for by that means are the combs well bruised together, and the bées either killed with the fall of them, or else fly away. After this, put all the combes on a heape, being gathered out of the hiues here and there, into a presse, leaning somewhat on the one side: but some put the combs into a wine basket made of smal willow or oster twigs finely knit and wrought together, that being hanged vp in a darke place, the honny may run through by little and little from it. After that the hony hath thus run forth into a clean earthen pan or boule standing vnder it, then the same after poure into an earthen pot, or pots being as yet raw honnie, but clearer and better then the other licour of the honnie: which for certaine daies let stand open, that the sweete licour may bée throughly cooled, and the same in the meane whiles often skimme or purge with a spoone. Now after this, the fine peeces or crummes of the combes, which yet remaine in the bagge of wicker, or wine basket, or presse, put into an erthen pot, pan, or kettle, ouer a very soft fire, that the

same may heat without boyling. alwaies keepe your hand in the vessell, to stir still about hither and thither the honnie and ware, and to open also the ware by peece-meale vntil the hony, and not the ware, shalbe throughly molten. When the hony through the heat beginneth a little to prick the hand, then poure all the whole masse or substaunce into a strainer, and putting the same in a presse made for the onely purpose, wring it hard about: yet it maketh no great matter, if the same be not so earnestly wringed or pressed out, that none of the honny remaine yet with the ware, seeing that the honny and ware haue effects in some causes alike. Now this hony, which is thus run forth, is named the sodden hony. which ought in like manner to be poured into earthen pots, and to stand open for certaine daies, skiming it daily with a spoone, vntill it be through cold. The noblier or worthier honny, is that which runneth out in a manner of it own accord, before the second pressing out of the combes. And mixe not of this second hony with the first, but keepe them diligently apart, least by mixing the first vnto the second, you make the best (being the first) the worser. After all this thus handled, the same yet remaineth in the strainer, wash diligentlye with conduit or fair spring water, that you may so haue the mulse or honny water, of which being sodden, and diligently skimmed (as of this hereafter shalbe further taught) is the mulse made, that serueth to many good vses.

Which Honie is accounted best. Cap. 25.

CErtaine Countries do excel in the perfect goodnes of honny, like as the famous Attica of Greece, which for the excellencie of the hony, is had in great reputation throughout the world. Hybla also and Hymetus, beeing hils of the same Country, which the deceiuers apply to honny, that the same may both be named Hymetus and Hybleus hony. Creta, Cyprus, and Affrica, as in goodnesse they are notable and worthy, so the aboundant or marueilous plenty of the honny is there commended. Also the newnes of hony is likewise commended as the ancientnesse of wines, but chiefly the spring and Sommer hony, especially if the vessell or hiue stand in a

valley

valley or bottome, and doth excel in the waight of hand. But the hony gathered of bitter hearbs is counted vnprofitable, as that same hony which the bees gather in the Countrey of Pontus, where the bees only gather their hony of the wormwood. The white in all countries is better esteemed then the blacke, but the best hony is that which is very cleare of a golden colour, of a most pleasant and sweet taste, cleauing somewhat to the fingers in the handling, and but little fetching or waxing hard together, and that in the pouring forth, doth straight-way breake heere and there, and squirteth or spyrtleth (sodainly as it were) sundry drops abroad, which being on this wise, Plinie teacheth to be the trial and sure note of good and profitable hony.

Of the venemous Hony, and of the wonderfull hony of Creta. Cap. 26.

IT so much forceth to vnderstand and know, what maner of food the same is, with the which the bees doe liue, as the poysoned hony also that may be gathered by them, whether it be euill or venemous. For the honny of Heraclea in that countrey of Pontus, hath bene for certaine yeares very dangerous, especially through a certaine hearbe growing white, which also vereth their cattle by eating therof, named of the dwellers there, Ægellothron. But by these notes is that hony found out, and tried to be venemous: as first, that the same is not thicke at all, the coulour brighter or more glittering, and hath a strong sauour, mouing forth-with often sneesing, and is also waightier. Also such persons as taste somewhat thereof, do couet to lie or fall hastily on the earth, seeking for coldnes, and bee all on a sweat, so that in such sodaine daungers, must some speedy helpes or remedies be ministred: like as the olde Pulse of the best honny, and hearbe Grace, or other like confections, bee often ministred vnto such persons. There is also another kind of venemous hony, in the border of the Country of Pontus, that for the madnesse which it engendreth, is named of the people Neonomenon: the same hony is supposed to bee gathered of the floure Rhododendros, which groweth plentie there in the woods. Plinie writeth of

a marueilous hony to bee in Creta, for that in Carina, being a hill of that Countrey, bee affirmeth a Honnye to bee gathered which the flies will not touche, and supposed also to bee a singular Honny, for the composition of euery medicine.

Of the miraculous worthinesse of Honnie. Cap. 27.

MOst men in Italy prepare and make their medicines, which they purpose to kæpe long with hony, so that hony preserueth euery thing from putrifying, which you wold haue in safety, and to continue for a season, through his clamminesse. And of this auntient men did embalme the bodies of the dead, which they would haue preserued, and to continue sound without corrupting many years, with hony onely, and the same they also smeared within the combs or sepulchers of the dead, for the longer kæping of the bodies. The selfe same writeth the lerned Papinus, of the body of Alexander, which was likewise embalmed with hony. And not vnlike to this writeth Pliny, in the 22. booke, and 24. Chapter of his Histories, of sundry dead bodies also embalmed with honny. And in another place of his Histories writeth Claudius Cæsar, that brought a monster out of Ægypt into his country, which was also embalmed with hony. Ahanæus also writeth, that bodies subiect to sicknesses, may both be kept frē from sicknesses, and from corrupting a long time, through the often smearing and annointing of hony of al the body. And the like writers report, that those of the Isle of Corsica, or Corse do, which liue a long time.

The Macrobians being a people in Affricke, named also Mœrein, do liue a long time (as certaine authors write) because with the meat of hony, which is plentifull with them, they daily be fed, and vse continually. Some affirm, that Democritus being recreated by hony, with the only breath and sauour of the hony made hot, liued (as they write) vnto 109. yeares. Aristoxenus writeth that the table of Pythagoras was daily furnished with onely bread & honny, and yet liued vnto the foure score and ten yeares of the Philosopher Heraclides.

clides. The hony also is found to auaile against surfeits, and of this accounted amongest medicines for the putting away drunkennes. Wherfore it is no maruel, that such throughly skilfull in Phisicke, when any bee ouercloyed or filled with wine, doe counsel first to empty their stomachs by vomiting, and after, against the force of the fume euaporating of the remnant of the wine yet remaining, they giue them to eate hony spread on bread, as it were by putting backe the cuill, that it may so remedy and put away the grosse fume.

How profitable the vse of Honie is in medicines. Cap. 28.

FIrst the white hony is to be vsed in soling medicines, but the yellow in heating medicines: also the nature and property of hony, is to cleanse and open, and to expell humours, therefore it is profitably applied in filthy vlcers, being boiled and annointed vpon. It closeth also lose and gaping flesh, through his wholnesse. And with Liquid Allome and honny soden together, are Kingwormes, and tornes or swelling of the fæt healed, by annointing therewith. Against the vncertaine soundings and noyse of the eares, and grieuous paines of them, take the honny, ground with that salt digged out of the earth, and droppe warme into the eares: the selfe same killeth both nits and lice, by only annointing the head therwith. Also the hony purgeth the eies dimme of sight, healeth smellings, and other defaults and griefes of the iawes, the swelling and kernels vnder the iawes neare to the throte, after the preparing to vse the same gargelled in the throat, and the mouth washed therewith. The Honnie eaten, causeth vrine, helpeth the cough (being cleane skimmed before) and the bite of a snake or adder. The hony also helpeth those which haue drunk vnwares the iuice of blacke poppy, so that against the same euil & danger they drink rosed hony warm. Also the same drunke, helpeth the malice & danger of Mushromes eaten, & the bite of a mad dog, or melting in ỹ mouth, after the forme of an Eclegma. Yet all the sorts of raw honny be windy and swel the body, mouing a rumbling or noyse in ỹ belly, procuring ỹ cough, easily conuerted into euil humors,

stopping

stopping the liuer and milt, through the clamminesse, and is hurtful to chollericke bodies, if so be the hony before (as Dioscorides writeth) be not throughly skimmed and clensed as the same ought to be. The hony also boiled, doth better nourish than the raw, yet lesse mouing the belly to solublenesse, and to the stole. And the honny of it selfe, or mixed with others, helpeth the sore in the lungs, and all other diseases of the lungs.

The hony is rightly ministred to such as haue the impostume in the lungs, and the pluresie. And the hony in which dead bees are, is applied to the venemous hony. The honny drunke with wine, helpeth the corruptions which are engendred of the meat fishes: but to colde and moist bodies the honie is more profitable, therefore very fit for olde persons, as Galen affirmeth. And to persons being twentie years of age and of an vntemperate hotnesse, or others hot of qualititie, the hony to them is hurtfull, because it is sone conuerted into choller in them. Democritus was vpon a time asked, by what means men might both continue in perfect health, and liue vnto very olde yeares? To which hee thus answered: if so be men annoint their bodies outward with Oyle, and apply their bodies inward with hony. Further, hony profiteth weake persons, being applied: as the Mulse water, of which shal after be taught in the next Chapter. To persons of cold of nature, the hony may aptly be ministred in hot broth: but to hot persons, ministred in warme broth, the honny is not rightly giuen. The hony mixed with Camphora, and lying to settle three daies before, with the which annointing the face, doth speedily cleanse the spots in the face, the like doth the hony mixed with the gall of an Ore. The pure white honny cleanseth the breast, softneth impostumes, beeing as well without as within the bodie. The hony also mundifieth, openeth the stoppings of the liuer and milt, helpeth dropsie bodies, and strengtheneth weake members. The Aromaticke hony much auaileth in sundry diseases, being thus prepared: as the pure red rose leaues, finely clippped and after boiled in pure white honny, beeing often and diligently skimmed: for

such

such honnie doth comfort and mundifie, dissolueth in cleansing the clammie swellings, digesteth the flegmaticke and grosse humours: and drunke also with colde water, it bindeth the belly, but ministred with warme water, it looseth the belly.

Of the drinke of Honie, which is called Mulse water, or sweet water of the Romaines. Cap. 29.

By the answer of Pollio the Romaine, to Augustus Emperour, we may euidently learne, that the Mulse made of hony, is healthfull drinke in strengthening the bodie. For Augustus on a time demanded of him by what means a man might liue to great yeares, and all that season frée from sicknesses? To whom he thus answered, that applying the mulse water within, and annointing oyle without the body, dooth worke the like. The Mulse truly is a drinke made of water and hony mixed together, which the Grækes properly name Melicrate, and some Hidromell, as the drinke made with wine vnlaied, or without water, and hony they aptly name Oenemell. Now the Mulse water drunke, doth ease the passage of winde or breath, softneth the belly: and the long time of oldnes, chaunge it into the kind of wine, is most agreeable and profiting to the stomack, but the same is contrary to the sinews: yet it recouereth the appetite lost, and is a defence against the dangerous drinke of Henbane, if it bee ministred with Asses milke. This drinke truly (Ægineta writing thereof) is thus made: let eight times so much water be mixed vnto your hony prepared, which boile or sæth so long, vntill no more come ariseth to be skimmed of, then taking it from the fire, preserue it to your vse. But Paule Ægineta affirmeth, that the Mulse profiteth nothing (in a manner) the cholericke, because the same in them is lightly conuerted into choller.

Of the drinke Oenomell, which is made of pure wine and honie. Cap. 30.

The Oenomel, which is a swæt wine made with honie, Ægineta teacheth to bee good, not onely for the preseruation of health, but also to expell the torment of sicknesses,

and that which giueth not onely strength of bodye and courage, but the long race of years: also it expelleth an old griefe of the reines, being often drunke with parcely seeds. But the best Oenomell is that which is made of olde and tart wine, and the best purified hony, for the same doth lesse swel. The same also harmeth, being drunke after meales, but before taken, doth procure an appetite. Dioscorides teacheth the maner of making the Oenomell in this order: first he willeth to take one galon and a quart of wine, and mixing it with halfe a galon & a pint of the best hony, to prepare the same orderly. But some prepare or make the drinke spæditier to vse, after this manner: as boyling the honie with wine, and after pouring forth the same into other vessels.

Of the singular water of Hony, gotten by order of distillation. Cap. 31.

The hony of bées meet to distillation, ought especially to bee white of colour, which before the distilling must bee mixed with pure, white, and wel washed sand, but not drie in anie case, after that put the same either into a common Rose Limbecke of Tinne, setting a hairie Sive close vpon it, that it may touch the hony in the distilling, or else into a body of Glasse, set into a pot of fine sifted ashes or sand, making at the first a soft fire vnder it, vntil the first water bee come, which is white: and after the yellow water appeareth, then put vnder another receiuer, setting aside the white: and so long distil vntil the red beginneth to shew, at the appearance of which, put vnder another receiuer, letting that remaine vntil no more will come. Which red water beeing the last, serueth for sundry vses, as to die womens haire yellowe, by often wetting the haire with a spunge, and drying the same in the hot Sun. Also it causeth faire and long haire, and stayeth the sheading of haire: besides (this third water) dooth cleanse the foul corruption and matter being in filthy wounds and old vlcers, if they be washed twice a day with the same, causing also newe flesh to grow in those places, if you daily washe them with the said water, or otherwise dippe linnen clouts in it, laying them aptly on the sores. The selfe same

healeth places grieuously burned, without appearance of any scarre afterward, by often applying linnen clouts dipped in it. And the second water (being of golden colour) dropped in the eies, doth not onely helpe swoln and bleared eies, but the pin and web in them, by the daily and often dropping of the same into the eies. But as touching the white and first water, there is no worthy matter mentioned in this place by any of the old practisers.

An other manner of distilling the hony, more at large taught. Cap. 32.

TAke a pint, or as much as you wil, of the pure rosed honny, which put it into a body of glasse, close couered and luted about, setting the same after into hot horse dung, with a square stone on the head, and couering it with the horse dung for 14 daies: after which time, take the body forth, setting it into a furnace of fine sifted ashes, wel a finger breadth or more aboue the honny, presupposing on your part, that litle peces of flint stones be put into the hony, and then distiled with a soft fire into a receiuer, wel luted at the mouth, for doubt of the aire breathing forth. When the same beginneth to distil then draw forth part of the fire (vnlesse you can otherwise gouerne your fire by the helpe of the furnace) which comming forth white, let so long distil, til there appeare yellow drops like to golde. Vpon the sight of this, set vnder another receiuer, keping diligently this first water by it selfe, and increasing the fire, let that so long distil, til certayne whyte smokes appeare running into the receiuer, and that spedely take away, putting to another receiuer, whych let so long distyl, vntyl no more wyl drop forth: and thys last is of a ruby colour in rednesse, so that if a woman often wettyng the hayre of her head with thys thyrd water, sittyng then in the hotte Sun, both to dry and wet them again, wearing in the meanwhiles a large strawn hat with an open crown, to spread the hairs vpon for the spedier drying of them, which so drying, doth not only cause the hairs to grow long & very fayr but dieth them in tyme so yelow as gold. Also to diuers other vses this red water serues, as afore is taught in ỹ other chapter.

The white water (which commeth first) by washing the face orderly with it, doth cause it to become cleare and faire, and keepeth the skin from loking olde for a long time, as the same hath bene experienced often by the worthy Dames of Rome, Naples, and Venice. And the yellow like gold, being the second water, doth especially serue to this vse, that if any person happeth to bee infected with the plague or pestilence, then to take two ounces of this yellowe water, of Aloes Epaticke, of red Myr, and of the east saffron, of each ten grains, and a leafe of the best golde, all which grind into fine pouder, mixing the same with this water, and after that giue it vnto the sicke to drinke, which no doubt will both helpe this and many other diseases.

The manner of distilling a water of hony, named the Quintessence. Cap. 33.

TO make this singuler and pretious water, you must take two pounds of the purest white hony, beeing both cleare and pleasant in tast, which put into a body of glasse, being so bigge, that foure or fiue parts of it may remaine emptie, the same luted strongly about, setting the head after on it, and a receiuer aptly to the nose of the Still: When you haue thus done, then make a gentle fire at the first vnder it, but after increase the fire or heat more and more, vntil certaine white smoakes appeare in the head of the glasse bodie, which you must workmanly cole and turne into water, by the *wetting* of linnen cloathes in cold water, and laid on the head & nose toward the receiuer, for that turneth into a water so red as bloud: and being all come, put it into another glasse, stopping the mouth close: which let stand so long, vntill the water become very cleare, and in colour to the Rubie. Now being on this wise, distill the same againe in Balneo Mariæ, and so often repeat this, vntill you haue distilled it sixe or seuen times ouer, that the colour be chaunged in the end to the colour of golde: which then is most pleasaunt of sauour, and so swéte, that nothing may be compared like vnto it in fragrantnes of smell.

The Quintessence doth dissolue gold, prepareth it apt to

be drunke, and any Jewell put into the water, it dooth also dissolue the same. Also this is named the blessed water, in that giuing to any two or three drams to drinke, being at the point of death, dooth so sodainly recouer the person againe, as doth the Quintessence of wine. And washing any grieuous wound or stripe with the water, doth in short time heal the same. Also this pretious water doth marueilously helpe the cough, the reume, the disease of the Splene, and many other diseases, which would scarcely be beleeued. The water also ministred daily vnto a person sicke of the palsey, for the space of 46. daies, will by the mighty helpe of God, and this miraculous water, throughly heale the disease. Also this Quintessence doth help the falling sicknesse, and preserueth the body from putrifying, so that by all these wee may learne, that this is rather a diuine water from heauen (and sent from God) to serue vnto all ages.

The manner of drawing and making waxe of the honie combes. Cap. 34.

THe hony being drawne from the combs, although some bees hang on them dead, yet put altogether into a faire pan or cauldron, into which poure so much water or more, as the quantity of the combes be. This set ouer a soft fire, vntil the same bee throughly heated and molten in the pan, and in the melting continually stir the same about with a big slatter, or some staffe, le all the waxe cleaue to the pannes sides through the flame or heat of the fire, and appeare burned: after, poure the whole substance into a course hairen bag, pressing it foorth into a trough, or other like vessell made for the onely purpose, on which poure two or three kettles full of hot water, that no dregges hang after on the ware, and by that meanes shal you haue the ware both pure and cleane. But if you will haue it cast into faire round cakes, and to be cleaner and purer, then melt the ware againe, and being molten, poure it into a cleane vessell, which washed likewise with hot water (as aboue was taught) set after in the Sunne, by which meanes the cake will continue verye long faire of colour.

What Waxe is best allowed and commended. Cap. 35.

WAre, being the food of light, and seruing vnto innumerable vses of men, of all the kinds the same is best allowed and commended, which is both newe made, meanely red of colour, somewhat fattie, smelling sweet, hauing some sauour in it of the honnie, and cleare. Of the Ware also of sundrie Countries, that in the Countrey of Pontus is well commended, and the same in the Ile of Creta: next to these is the ware in the Ile of Corsica, which is made of the Bore træ, and supposed to haue some good effectes in it for Medicine.

Of the great commoditie and benefite of wäxe in Medicines. Cap. 36.

VVAre hath a meane among heating things, both in the coling, drying, & moistning, as writeth Galen in the seuenth booke of simples, and 22. Chapter, which properly helpeth the roughnesse of the breast, when it is ioyned or mixt with the oile of Violets, for that it both mollifieth or softneth the sinews, and ripeneth and dissolueth vlcers. The quantity of a pease in ware swallowed downe of nurses, or such women as giue sucke, doth dissolue the milke courded in the paps. And ten little peeces of pure newe ware, vnto the bignes of a hemp-seed, drunke downe at one time, doth cause the milke not to courd in the womans stomacke and breasts. If the priuy place, or there about, of either man or woman, happeneth to swell, then by applying an ointment made of white ware, it shortly asswageth and healeth the same. If any also happeneth to bee diseased with the bloudy flixe, by stuffing a yong Pigeon with new wax, after roasting the same, and eating the flesh thereof, doth in short time after stay the same. Also, if a quince made hollow and filled with pure new ware, be after roasted vnder hot embers vntill the same bee tender, & eaten fasting without drinking after it, doth in like sort stay and helpe the perillous flixe, and scouring of bloud. The wax besides, serueth to al maner of plasters, ointments suppositories, and such like.

Of

Of that which is a stay of the combes, and made for a defence of bees from cold. Cap. 37.

THe same made of bées at the entry of the mouth of hiues, ought to bee yellow of colour, and sweet smelling like to Storax, and drawn into a length like to Mastike, yea, that is rather chosen, because in heating and drawing it is princypallest. For of it selfe, this draweth forth thornes or splents of wood run déepe into the flesh, by applying it plaister wise on the griefe: it helpeth an old cough, by making a smoke therof, and holding the mouth ouer it. and applied in the forme of an ointment on ring woormes, doth spédily heale them. Now this matter (as aboue was taught) is the stay of the honnie combs, by which bées stop and kéepe forth all manner of cold and other annoyaunces which might endammage them, the same also being of so strong a sauor, that some vse it in ỹ stéd of Galbanum. M. Varro nameth it a refuge of bées without their cotages, because bées make the same at the entry of the hiue.

How to make Waxe white. Cap. 38.

WAre is made white in this manner. First that kinde of war (fit for this purpose) ought to be whiter and purer, and broken into little péeces, put after into a newe earthen pan, pouring vpon it sufficient salt or sea water, and a little Niter brused, which séeth altogether. When ỹ same hath boiled twice or thrise vp, remoue the pan from the fire, & the war being throughly colde, take forth of the pan, and scraping off the filth, if any such hang on, put again into new salt water, seething it againe. And when the ware hath so often boiled (as aboue was taught) then take off the pan from the fire, and in the bottome of a new earthen panne, melt it with cold water, which dippe by little and little into the Ware, drowning it a little, so that the water be aboue the Ware, wherby the Ware may become very thinne, and bee the sooner cooled it selfe: then taking by and by out the mould or bottome, drawe first the round Cake off, and wetting againe the bottome in colde water, dippe it into the Ware, and the same so long do, vntil you haue drawne off all that war into

cakes

cakes of like sort, which after stitch through with thred, hanging the cakes on a rope one from another, and that in the day time often wetting them in the sunne, but in the night time in the Mone light: and so long doe this, until the war be white. And if any desireth to haue ware whiter than this, then let him do the like, as aboue said, but boile the war oftner. Some in stead of the salt sea-water take strong Wine water, in which they boile the war in the same maner twice or thrice, as aboue was taught. And Paulus Euerdus in his booke of Confections, teacheth the making of ware white two maner of waies.

How you may make red Waxe. Cap. 39.

THat you may colour and make Ware red, take vnto one pound of ware, three ounces of verie cleare Turpentine, if it be in sommer, but if it be in winter, then take foure ounces: now these dissolue and melt together ouer a soft fire, and taking it from the fire, let it coole a little, after which put in Vermillion finely ground on a Marble stone, and sweet Sallet oyle, of each one ouce, mixing these well, stirre altogether diligently. But some in stead of Vermillion, do take red lead which is litle commended, except there be three times so much of the red lead as of the Vermillion put in. And in the like sort may you make greene ware, if in stead of the Vermilion you take so much of greene Copouras finely ground, as you did of the Vermillion.

How to draw a profitable oyle out of Waxe, for sundry vses. Cap. 40.

THe Oyle of ware, is miraculous and diuine in working, because it serueth in a maner vnto all griefes. Reymond Lullo greatly commendeth this oile, approouing it rather as a celestiall and diuine remedy, and that this in wounds doth worke most miraculously (which for his maruelous commodity is not so well allowed of the common Chirurgions) because this pretious oyle healeth a wound, be the same neuer so wide and big, (being before wide stitched vp) in the space often or twelue daies at the most: but those which are small this Oyle healeth in three daies, by annointing onely on the cuts

cuts or wounds, and laying after linnen clouts, (being wet in the said oyle) vpon the wounds. For inward diseases the said oyle worketh miraculously (if that you minister or giue a dram at a time in white wine to drinke) and stayeth also the shedding of hair, either on the head or beard, by annoynting the places with this oyle. Besides these, it is miraculous in the procuring of vryne, being mightily stopped, and helpeth also stitches and paine in the loynes, by drinking the like quantitye of the Oyle aboue taught in white wine.

Now the making and drawing of this oyl, is on this wise. First take a body of Glasse, named a Retort, which strongly lute about with clay & flockes, diligently tempred together with salt water: after the body is thus fenced, and thorough dry, put in a pound or more of pure newe ware, so that the said wax filleth not aboue half your body, and to euery pound of wax, poure in foure ounces of the pouder of red brick, finely brused, which after set into an earthen pot, filling it round about with fine sifted ashes or sand. After this, set the potte with the body in it on a furnace, making a soft fire at the first vnder it, and after encreasing a little more your fire, distill them so long, vntil all your oyle be come, which after a while wil congeale in the receiuer, but it maketh no great matter although the oyle so doe, for it is neuerthelesse in his perfection: because, that if you should distill it so often ouer, vntil it wil congeale or stiffen no more in the receiuer, then shal you make it ouer hot, and so quicke in the mouth, that it is not possible by any meanes to drinke it downe. But beeing once distilled, you may either giue it in Wine to drinke, or annoynt with the Oyle vppon any place of the body where you wil, which will alwayes doe good, and hurt in no manner.

And in consideration of these aboue taught, you may euidently learne and perceiue, that this miraculous Oyle ought to bee had in great estimation of the common sort.

Another excellent way to drawe oyle of waxe, that greatly helpeth the colde Gout, the Sciatica, the swelling of the legs, & all other griefes proceeding of colde. Cap. 41.

TAke of pure new ware, so much as you list, which put into a pan ouer the fire to melt, and being molten, haue by you in a readines another pan well glased & cleane within, filled with good and perfect wine, into which poure your molten ware, letting it soake and drinke in well, and wash it oftē in the said wine. after this, take the ware forth, melting it againe on the fire, and being molten, wash the same againe in pure wine, so that euery time melting the ware, poure it into fresh wine, washing and soking it in the same diligently, and after wring it well with your handes: being vsed thus, melt and wash againe in the aboue said manner eight times togither: then set the same forth (being a cleare season & aire) all the night, after which put the ware into a Retorte, with a little Mumia and oyle of Yperidon or Saint Johns wort, and a little olde oyle: Although without these it may do good, yet mixed with these, it worketh far better then vsed alone.

Now to return to the former matter: This crooked body or Retorte, set in fine sifted ashes, & a gentle fire made vnder it, vntill all the oyle do run forth, and in this comming forth of the oyle shall appeare all the foure Elaments, the aire, the water, earth and fire, which will orderly appeare in the receiuer, right maruellous to see. And the oyle beeing thus fully drawne, worketh miraculously in all diseases which procede of a colde cause.

The conclusion to the Reader.

THus gentle Reader I haue (I trust) fully satisfied thy desire in as many things as are needfull to be knowne: Wherfore I commit this my little Booke to thy gentle iudgement. If thou maist receiue any profite or commoditie therby, I shalbe glad of it: and if not, yet fauourably let it passe from thee to others, whose knowledge and experience is lesse then thine herein, that they may gather such thinges as to them are strange, though to thee well knowne before.

And thus briefly I commit you to Almightie

GOD. Certaine

¶ Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer.

CHAP. 1.

First consider and marke, that how the weather is a day before, the day present, and the day after the Suns entrance into the signe Aries, and such like shall the weather be (for the most part) in these three monthes. September, October and Nouember.

And loke how the weather shalbe at the Suns entrance into the signe of Leo, as the day before, and the day after, and such commonly shalbe in December, January & Februarie. for if the winde shall then blowe out of the north or east, and those daies drie, then shall follow a very colde season in those three monthes: but if the winde blowe out of the south or west, and that it rayneth in those three dayes, then yse to followe in those three months. And if the weather in those three dayes shalbe neither wholy drie, nor wholy moiste, then shal followe an vnstedfast winter.

And like as the weather shalbe at the Suns entrance into the signe Libra, as at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most parte) shall be the spring, in March, Aprill and May.

And loke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into Aquarius, at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most part) shall the weather be in June, July and August.

And many ancient men affirm, that like as the weather shalbe whiles the Sunne is running by the signe Libra, and vnto the 20. degree of Scorpio, which time is from that day (named the exaltatiõ of the crosse) vnto the day of al Saints such for the most part shall the yeare following be, as in diuiding that foresaid time into twelue monthes, and that foure dayes doe aunswer to each monthy, of the which foure dayes,

that each one of the foure, dooth declare the condition of the quarter following: and beginning also to reckon November as the first moneth of the yeare.

And the general signes of derth and plenty after the minds of the ancient husbandmen be these, as the ouer much colones drying, the ouermuch moysture softning, the ouermuch heat greatly burning, and the ouer-much drines putrifying and working into dust: For when any of these qualities shal excéd in the proper time, but especially in that tyme which to the corne and fruits do not agrée, then shal derth and scarcity both of fruits and corne ensue.

As for example, when the moneth of March shalbe ouer moyst and wet, which rather ought to bee dry, and that the month of April shalbe dry, which then ought to be moist, doth after pronounce the penury of the fruits of the earth.

And if that part also of Sommer shalbe wet in which the corne doth then fal vnto ripenes, that rather ought to be dry, doth after signifie the scarsity both of corne and other fruits of the earth.

And the like may be said of the other constitutions: for which when the Elementall qualities shalbe in such a condition as doe best agree, then doe they promise both fruitfulnesse and plentifulnes.

And if in the spring be signes of cold and drought, and that in the end of the spring near the ful moone be frosts, then shal folow very smal yeld of the fruits of the earth, and litle wine that yeare following.

And if the Spring bee dry, then few shall the fruits of the trées be, yet good: and scarsity of corne shalbe that yeare.

And if the spring shalbe cold, the fruits of the earth shalbe late ripe.

And if the spring and Sommer shalbe ouer wet or misty or colde, with cloudy weather for many dayes together, whiles al the trées haue borne theyr blossomes, and the fieldes theyr floures, and begin to shed theyr floure, then shal follow the scarsitye of fruytes of the earth in that yeare, or els a verie great rot of them, and many sicknesses in that yeare.

And

And if the sommer be drier then customably, then shal follow the scarcitie of corne, yet the sommer fruites shall that yeare bee sound, the fishes then dye, & most sharpe sicknesses shall raine that yeare.

And if the Sommer shalbe hotter than customably, then shall followe many sicknesses or diseases, yet great plentie of the Sommer fruites that yeare.

And if the Sommer shalbe coulder then customably, then shall follow a healthfull yeare, but the fruites of the earth shall late ripe that yeare.

And here further note of the spring, that if in the same season of the spring, there shall be a more plentie of all floures and fruites toward then customably, doeth after signifie a scarcity of corne that yeare, vnlesse the heate of sommer doth otherwise reforme the same.

And the wise and ancient husbandmen haue obserued, that when the winter shall send downe store of raine on the earth so that the same exceede not or bee too much, and that the March following bee drie, and the Aprill wette by often showres, and that the same parte also of Sommer be drie in which the corne falleth to ripnesse, then doeth the same promise a plentifull yeare.

And when that part of the Harnest shalbe fayre and dry in which the wheat is sowen, and the part of sommer in which corne falleth to ripenesse shalbe faire and dry, the spring also meanly warme, doth then not onely promise fruitfulnesse, but a plentiful yeare of corne.

And now the Harnest moyster then customably, doth putrifie the grapes, and causeth a smal yeld of wines that year with the scarsity of other fruits.

And also if in the latter part of harnest it be moister, then in the yeare following shal ensue scarsity of corne.

And if the Harnest be drier in the first part, then in the yeare following, shal Rie, and that smal graine named Mil, and such like, be deare.

And if the harnest be hotter then customably, then shal follow a diseased yeare, and that dangerous.

And if the Haruest be colder than customably, then shall follow the losse of the Haruest fruits, both in the store and tast of them.

And the winter colde and dry, is of all husbandmen commended, but extreame cold doth then slea the trée, especially those which ioy in a warme aire, as the Pomegranate tree, the Oliue trée, the Lemmon trée, the Figge tree, the Peach-tree, and such like.

And if the winter exceed in the extremity of coldnes, then dooth it signifie harme, both to the Wine and Oliue trée, the Cherie trée, and the yellow Quince trée.

And if the Winter bee hot and moist, then the same doth pronounce an vnhealthful yeare, and daunger to seedes and fruits of the earth.

And the excesse quality, and distemperature of any of the foure quarters, is euill and daungerous to the fruites of the earth.

And the plenty of snow falling in due season of the yeare, doth fatten the earth, (and if the others doe helpe) then dooth it signifie the plenty of corne and other fruites of the earth.

And if any washeth their hands with snow, it dooth than make them studY, in that the snow is ingendred of a vapour somewhat dry and earthly.

And the snow nourisheth sheep and other beasts, in that the snow is ingendred of moist aire, in which life consisteth.

And the snowe increaseth the corne and other growing thinges on earth, in that by his coldnesse it so dooth shut the pores of the earth, that the heat with the which the séedes of the earth be cherished, cannot then breake forth.

And the Snowe heateth and cherisheth the earth, by the thicke couering of it, and defendeth the grene wheat and other séeds sown, from the sharpe & vehement cold of the aire.

And the snow may be kept all the yeare vnder the earth, couered with straw, and profitable it is to mixe with wine in an hot sommer, and necessary also to cole the aire about sicke persons.

And

And the vnprofitable falling of the dew, mists, or fogs (especially when all crescent things doe bud forth, and shewe their floure) as in the moneth of Aprill and May, as well on the trees, corne, and grasse, which beasts then feeding on bee greatly harmed, through the dew fallen, and all other things also much harmed by the same, as hath bin often obserued by the ancient and wise husbandmen.

And in the ouer-much falling of raine, frosts, or hail, especially in the spring time, and in the winter time, whilest the corne is yet as grasse, the excesse of raine also doth then threaten the scarsity of victuals to ensue that yeare.

And the great plenty of beanes, after the opinion of the common husbandmen, through much raine fallen, doth foreshewe the scarcitie of Corne, and especiallie of Wheat that yeare.

And a like iudgement may be giuen of the Oke and Holly tree, which if they beare plentifully, then a fruitfull yeare followeth, and contrariwise bearing but few, then a dear yeare of corne doth ensue.

And the great plenty of Grashoppers, wormes, and Caterpillers, appearing in their proper time more than customably, do not only declare harme to vines and seeds sowen, but to all fruits that yeare.

And the greater store of winds, not only cause litle fruits but scarcity of corne to ensue that yeare.

And a stilnes in a manner throughout the yeare, doth declare a likelihood of the plague to ensue shortly after.

And the auncient Hipocrates writeth, that when in the sommer the North wind long continueth, and in the haruest the south wind, with store then of raine, it doth after threaten in the Winter the heade-ache, hoarsenesse of voyce, the cough, consumptions or impostumes to ensue.

And if after a dry Sommer (as write the ancient Phisitions) the North winde doth long continue in the Haruest, then the bodies of Women, and such diseased with a moyst sicknesse, do then in that season the rather recouer health, in that the drinesse of the seasons and winds is contrary to the excesse

excesse and the rotennesse of the humours by which the sicknesses were caused.

And if the Winter shalbe hot and moyste, and the spring cold and drie then doth the same threaten sickenesse to men in the sommer, and that women with childe shall haue vntimely birthes of a light occation.

And Hypocrates writeth, that when in the winter be longer Northerly windes, and in the spring longer Southerlye windes, and that rainie and wet in the Sommer following, then dothfollow Agues, and the diseases of the eies.

And when after a colde Winter, there be South windes and rainie in the spring, and that the Sommer be drye, then in the haruest following doe Agues ensue, paines also of the bowels, through the great scouring of the body, and sicknesses, with the which old men, diseased persons, and children be then more pained.

And when the South-west winde doth long blow about the ende of haruest, then those persons diseased with a long sicknes, do shortly after die.

And a further knowledge of dearth and plenty of victuals, and of sicknes, may be had on this wise.

First in the end of Haruest, cut open two or three Oake apples, loking whether there be in them either flies, worms, or spiders: and if in the Oke apple be found wormes or Gagots, then they signifie (after the opinion of ancient husband men) both dearth and scarsity in that yeare.

And if in the Oke apple cut open, bee found like to flies, it doth after threaten batle to ensue that yeare.

And if in the Oke apple be found like to spiders, then doe they forshew the plague or pestilence to ensue in that yeare

And to conclude, the only proufe of the former taught, shall moue the Reader better to credite these.

An

An euerlasting Prognostication of the state and condition of euerie yeare, by the onely Kalendes of Ianuarie: written by that auntient learned *Leopoldus Austriacus*, and others, for the commodity of the wise husbandmen. Chap. 2.

When the first day of January shall happen on the sunday, then the winter shall be temperate and good, yet windy, the spring wet, the sommer drie, and the harueſt hurtful through winds. So that victuals shalbe reasonable good cheape, plenty of wines, the good health and increase of shéepe and other cattle, and the indifferent plenty of hony, and the like plenty also of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and the herbs and fruits of the gardens. Also yong men shall die that yeare, and a discord to be feared betwéene kings, or els some manifest perils to happen vnto kings and great Prelats in authoritie, and that diuers robberies shall be attempted that yeare. And if controuersies happen betwéene Princes, then a conclusion of peace to be loked for in that yeare.

And if the first day of Januarie shall happen on the Monday, then shall the winter be warme. the spring very colde, with snow and frostes that season, the Sommer boysterous through windes, and haile oftentimes, and land flouds shall be somewhere, and the harueſt verie drie. So that sicknesses shall ensue, through which many of the simple sort shal then die, and diuers also shal die through sodain plague then hap-

ning: Also the likelihode of greate alteration to ensue, and the ancient women to mourne, Kinges to dye, and a greate slaughter to be feared by the sword: Also smal store of wines the death of Bees, and little honye that yeare.

And if the first beginning of January shall be on tuesday then the winter shall be longe, and much snowe in that season, and the likelihod of landfloods, through much rayne then falling: the Spring windye, the Sommer verye wette, and the Harueste abounding in grosse and rotten humours (so that a most grieuous plague is to be feared, and especially of women) and the likelihod of many shipwracks, and very great cares and troubles to happen vnto Princes, with the scarsitye of the frutes of trees: and corne shall be deare, and a sodaine death of Cattell to be feared that yeare.

Also wood that yeare shall be deare, and the likelihode of fearefull fires, and that the plague to be grieuous that year. And yet there shall be plenty of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and store of hearbs and floures. And there shall be plenty of honye, oyle, and wines that yeare.

And when the first of January beginneth on the wednesday, then shall the winter be warme and calme, the spring wette, and disposed to sicknesses, the Sommer hotte, and the Harueste vnprofitable, so that long sicknesses are to be feared, and the quarten Ague with them. Also young men shall then be sicke and in ieoperdie of death, and women the like, and in sundry places shal happen a famine, with a great bruite of strange newes. And there is also to be feared the grieuous passions of the hart, the idlenes of minde, or rather distraught, and the diseases of the matrice in women: and yet the plenty of Oyle and wines, but the scarsitie of corne to be douted that yeare.

And if the beginning of January be on thursday, then shal the winter be calme and temperate, the Spring windie, the Sommer vnseasonable, and the Harueste drye, so that corne and victuals shall then be deare, yet store of Oyle and wines that yeare. And there is a likelihod of light sicknesses to happen vnto the common people, but more daungerous sicknes-

ses

ses vnto the richer sorte. And the bleardnesse of the eyes is also to be feared, and that yong children shall then dye, battels procured, and the sedition of souldiours, and an earthquake to be douted that yeare.

Also great talke of newes shall be in Kirges and Princes houses, and great perrilles also to be douted to happen vnto Princes in that yeare.

And if the first day of Januarye happen on Fridaye, then shall the winter be very colde and drye. the Springe boysterous and wette, the Sommer temperate, the Haruest more wette then drye: so that bleardnes and other diseases, with the filthynesse of matter running in the eyes, is to be feared, and the pin and web is likewise to be douted to happen that yeare. And yong children shall then dye: and a likelihod that yong women shall be allured vnto wanton loue, through the flatterye and great persuasions of men. Also a suspition of battelles to ensue in that yeare. and the plague and robberies then to happen. Also plenty of frutes is then promised, although much haile fall that yeare.

And if the beginning of January happen on Saterday, then the winter shall be windie and vnstable, the spring windie and vnconstant of weather, the Sommer vnstable with many tempestes, and the Haruest drie: so that victuals shall be deare, small store of corne, and little frute that yeare. Also sheepe shall not well prosper in that yeare, and a likelihode then of the death of swine, and that wood shal be deare.

Also ther shalbe many tertian agues, and divers other diseases reigning among men, so that olde men shall then dye, and a likelihod of the death of many men by the plague. Also many fires shalbe heard of, little store of wines, Oyle and honye, yet plentye of hay that yeare.

And if newyeres night (being the first night of January) shalbe calme and cleare, without winde and raine, then doth the same promise a prosperous yeare folowing.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blowe out of the East, then doth the same signifie the death of Cattell to ensue that yeare.

And if the same night the wind happen to blow out of the West, then a likelihode of the death of kings or Princes to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the South, then doth the same signifie the death of many persons to ensue that yeare.

And if in the same night the winde happen to blow out of the North, then doth the same signifie the small yeelde of all fruits of the earth that yeare.

How to foreknow the state of the yeare, by the onely rising of the dogge starre, out of the husbandry of Diophanes. Cap. 3.

AND about the knowledge of this, there is to be considered and noted, in what signe the Mone shall then bee, at first appearaunce of the dogge starre aboue the earth in our Realme of England, which generally be reckoned is about the seuenth day of July.

And now if the Mone runne then in the signe of Aries at the first appearance of the dog star, it dooth after declare the death of cattle and much raine. So that small yeld of corne, yet plenty of Dyle shalbe that yeare.

And if the Mone run then in the signe Taurus at the first appearance of the dog star, then it doth signifie much raine, fogs, and mists, that shall harme much that yeare.

And if the Mone run then in the signe Gemini at the first appearance of the dog starre, it dooth after promise plenty of corne and wine, and all other fruits of the earth, yet a diseased yeare, and to bee doubted that a king shall then die, and that rebellion also shalbe moued that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Cancer at the first appearance of the dog star aboue the earth, it doth after threaten drought, with great scarcitie of corne to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Leo at the first sight of the dogge starre, it after promiseth plentie both of

wines

wines and Oyle, and good cheape of corne and other victuals that yeare: and yet to bee feared the commotions of the common people, and slaughter the same to ensue, with an earthquake, and land floods to happen in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearance of the dog star, it after signifieth plenty of showers, and the great store of fruits of the earth, and the cheapenesse also of cattle: and yet to be feared that women shall be deliuered before their time in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearaunce of the dog starre, it after declareth the stirring vp of a king, and a commotion of the common people: and yet the plentie of fruits of the trees, although there bee a likelihood of the scarcitie of corne and oyle in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Scorpio at the first apperaunce of the dog starre, it after declareth the commotion of Prieſtes, the destruction of Bées, and an infectiue aire to ensue that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Sagitarius at the first sight of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after signifieth a rainy yeare, yet fruitfull, and the plentie of corne, and ioy among men: and yet is to be feared the death of cattle, and the multitude of foules in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Capricornus at the first appearance of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after declareth the commotion of souldiers, and great store of raine, and yet plentie of corne, wines, and Oyl, and all other things good cheape in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Aquarius at the first appearaunce of the dogge starre aboue the earth, it after signifieth the death of some king or Prince, the scarcitie of corne, and the plentie of such flies with long hinder legs that burne corne by the touching of it: and yet litle raine, and the plague to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Pisces at the first appearance of the dog starre aboue the earth, it after declareth much raine, and the death of birdes: and yet doothit

promise a sufficient store, and laudable plentifulnesse, both of Wines, Oyle, and corne, but many persons shall be diseased in that yeare.

Other profitable instructions, right necessary for husbandmen to know. Cap. 4.

AND first, if the horne of the Ramme (nære his eare) bee bored, the same doth tame his fiercenes. And if his right genitour be trussed vp before he goe to couer the Ewe, then doth he beget an Ewe lambe. And if the left bee thus strait trussed vp, and the right hanging downe, then doth he beget a hæ lambe.

And if in the time of the South winde blowing, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, he doth after beget a she lambe.

And if when the North wind bloweth, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, doth after beget a hæ lamb. And of what colour also the vains shalbe vnder the tongue of the Ewe, such shall the colour of the skin of the lamb be: for if she hath black vaines vnder the tong, then the lambe shall be black of skin, and if white vaines vnder the tongue, then shall she haue a white lambe: and if of diuers colours, then the lambe shal be of diuers colors on the skin. And that antient Isaac writeth, that rams in their yong yæars be of lesser moisture and clamminesse, then be the sucking lambs, and this is through their age and quality then ruling.

And therefore the flesh of yong weathers be better, and ingender better bloud then the sucking lambes.

And this is here spoken of such Rammes as be gelded, in that their moisture and hotnesse is then temperate.

And the weathers ouer olde are to bee refused in eating, that they be then colde and drie without moisture, and they smally nourish, and hardly disgest.

Also bæfe and other flesh of beasts being old, be euill to eat, through the coldnes and drines, and through the lack of the moysture and hotnesse. And when the old Rams in their time to couer the Ew, be soner moued thereto than the yong Rams, it dooth then signifie a good and profitable season to ensue in that year, and a good season and prosperous also for

shæpe.

sheepe. But if in the proper time to couer the Ewe, the yong Rams be sooner prouoked thereto than the olde Rams, then doth follow the great rot or murraine of sheep in that yeare.

Also Ewes by drinking of water conceiue the sooner with Lambe, and for this the sheepheards giue them salt to eat, wherby in more drinking of water, they may so cõceiue with yong, & they are also by that meanes preserued the healthfuller. And in the harueſt also some sheepheards giue them to eat Gourds seasoned with salt, to increase their milke, for by that means doth the milk more plentifully issue forth of their teats, and the Ewes doe sooner conceiue. Also in Sommer is the colde Northerly water good for them, and in the Harueſt the warme Southerly water good for them.

Also to let sheep feed in the end of the day, is greatly commended: and if they also stirre but little abroad, the same is thought very profitable, in that the much iourneing, and labouring of them hither & thither, doth cause them to become leane. Also the skilfull sheapheardes know which sheepe will wel indure the sharpe winter, and which not, in that vppon some of the sheeps backs (as they affirme) Ice, may be found and vpon other some none at all. So that by this may be lerned, that such sheepe which be weak, a man can hardly pluck off the yce from their backes. And further learne, that those sheepe which haue long tailes, may hardlier abide the sharpe cold water, than those hauing broad tailes: and the sheep also curled of haire (doe in like sort) hardlier indure the bitter winter: and besides these, the thunder greatly harmeth sheep, especially if any Ew being with yong happeneth to be alone at that instant, for that she then being with lamb, doth of ỹ fearful noise of the thunder, deliuer her lamb before the time: and for a special remedy to saue that vntimely casting of Lambs at such times, the skilful sheepheards haue found out, that the onely driuing of many Ewes, to gither is a sure safegard to them to auoyd this occasion. Besides, if you will remoue the rott of sheepe, that they die no more: then take the belly of a Ram, and seeth the same in wine and water togither, which after mixe with water, and giue the same generallye to all the

the sheepe to drinke, for by that meanes shall they againe be recouered of their disease. And heere learne, that the flesh of sheepe, and other foure foted beastes, which commonly feed in moyst ground, is euill to feed vpon, for the hard digestion of the same. Also learne, that the good sheepe are knowen by their age, as being neither too old, nor yet as lambs and by the forme also they are knowen, if so be you find them large of body.

And they besides haue much and soft Wooll, and both thicke and long haire, especially on the nape, and about the necke, and the like haire on the belly. And both the health and sickneſſe of sheepe may be known, if so be any open their eies, and finde the vaines within to be red and small. it doth vndoubtedly declare them to be sound and good: but if those vaines shall appeare white, or red and big, then those sheepe are diseased and weake. And if the sheepe goe lustily and boldly by the way, it is a sure token that they be sound: but sadly and hanging down the head, then be they diseased. These hitherto of the yearely coniectures, and other rules, onely méet for husbandmen to vnderstand and know.

An

¶ *A most profitable rule for the preseruation of mans health, throughout the twelue Moneths of the yeare, after the minde of diuers learned men of the Vniuersitie of Padua.*

Chapter 5.

Ianuarie.

And first in the moneth of January, draw no bloud out of any vaine, vnlesse a great necessity constraineth thereto, that you cannot otherwise chuse. But if you bléd by vaine, beware of taking any cold in this month, so nigh as you can, and walke not abroade in the night time: and vse to eat then the best confections, and to drinke often white wine in this moneth, for that flegme doth then increase. And to fast long in this moneth, is hurtfull to the body: but to eat salets wel prepared with oile and spices, is well commended. And washe not thy head in this month, but to bath your body, or to take a vomit, you may safely do in this moneth.

Also take euery morning once (throughout this month) for thrée houres before dinner, a litle quantity of rosed hony, for that the same doth comfort the stomacke, and clense the body both of choller and flegme. And drinke also these spices either in wine or ale, as Graines, ginger, Nutmegs, Cloues and such like, for those be greatly commended in this month.

Februarie.

In the moneth of February, vse to eat confections tanded with hony, for that they purge the body. And to eat Ap-

ples in this Monethe is commended: but to eate often freshe Beefe, or other meates that be moyst, or to eate anye pottehearbs, except Parcelye or Smallach, is thought hurtfull. And rather eat oftner sodden meat then roasted in this moneth, for that the same doth keepe the body soluble. Also to bath in this Moneth is not hurtfull, nor to take a potion or to bleede in that veyne vnder the thombe, and you may safely take pilles in this Moneth, to purge the head, for that a man feeleth himselfe more grieued with a heuinesse in the head in this Moneth, then in any other Moneth.

And to eate honny with breade in this Moneth is commended, for that the same doth purge the brest and blader.

March.

In the Moneth of March vse to eate pleasante and well spiced meates but sharpe meates refraine in this Moneth and to drinke pleasante and stronge wine is nowe commended. And eat often Leeke pottage: and to bath often in that Moneth is greatly commended. But beware of takinge any potion, to purge, or bleede byveyne in this Monthy And vse to eate often of the hearbe Pennyroyall, for that the sam doth heate the stomacke, and causeth then the better disgestion. And in your salets also eate of the hearbe Betonie, for that the same doth cleare and helpe the sighte, and much amendeth the heade, Also Graynes, Ginger, Nutmegges, Galingale, Pepper, and such like spices, be profitable to drinke in this moneth.

Aprill.

In this Moneth of Aprill doth blood encrease, wherefore to eat pleasant meates, and riuer fishe, and salets often, is now commended. And to bleede by veyne in any parte of the body, except ỹ veine of the lungs, is now thought profitable, for by opening the veine is dangerous, but to open at the middle veine is greatlie commended, and likewise bathing often in this Moneth. And to purge the stomach with a potioon or otherwise is very good, but eat no kind of rots in this month.

And

And to eat all kind of flesh, except pigs, is thought good in this moneth: and you may now enter into Phisicke for any grief of the body, (but drinke moderatly) and you may also safely bleed for the the scabs in this moneth: and vse to eat Betonie and Pints prepared in hony, and drinke first in the morning without eating of any thing, and to drinke also the hearbe Grace in wine is now profitable: but beware of eating anie kind of salt fish in this moneth, for that the same doth engender both the itch and the scab on the body.

Maie.

In the month of May, wash often thy face with fair running water: But vse not to eat of such meates as bee hot of quality: and bleed in any part of the body, where need shalbe, but it is most profitable to bleed in the fet, for that the bloud then hath his course down to the fet: and beware also of eating any stale fish, or tainted flesh that sore smelleth: and eat your meales now in due season, and drinke but litle wine in this moneth. And to bathe in any condition in this moneth is not vnprofitable: and to drinke clarified whay simply, or drawne with colde hearbes, is now very healthfull vnto hot stomacks. And pure wine also mired with goats milke, and with that to anoint both the head and brest, is greatly commended: and to drinke sharpe drinkes in this moneth, is thought good, and to take phisicke, if need requireth. But eat no head nor fote of any beast in this moneth, because of the moisture of the hearbes and grasse which the beasts doe eat in the same. And to drinke wormwood wine is thought very profitable in this moneth, and to eate Fenell rots tenderly sodden And to take gentle Lares to purge the blood and body is now thought good, and to slep after dinner. And also some thinke, that to bleed on the head vaine, or liuer vaine, is profitable in this moneth.

Iune.

In the moneth of June, abstaine from all such meates as doe engender fleagme, but drinke of the pleasauntest Wine, and sometimes in the morning fasting a cuppe of white wine, for that the same doth now purge choler in man.

And to eat salets of Lettuce prepared with vineger, is thoght profitable, for that they bee good against the humours which do discend vnto the kidneis: and vse to eat such meates as be light of digestion, and arise alwaies (this moneth through) from the table somewhat hungry: and arise also timely in the morning, and exercise your body with some long walke. And any may safely bleed that needeth in this month: but beware of eating milke, vnlesse the same be well sodden, and likewise take heed both of the eating of cheese and apples in this moneth. And a man may bathe himselfe in this moneth, so that he tarry not long therein. And to wash the fet often in colde water, is likewise commended.

Iulie.

In the month of July, it is not good to eat strong meats, nor those which do greatly nourish, or pleasant spiced meats. for the hotnesse of the season, for that the Dog daies be entred in. And therefore beware of bleeding by vaine, or of taking any medicine to purge the bodye: and yet maye a man bleed a little by cupping in the bath. And in this moneth, and in the other moneth following, a man may drinke but little wine, for that the same doth dry the stomacke and liuer, and increaseth choller: and the smallest and weakest drinkes are now to be vsed fasting against choller: and in this moneth refraine your selfe from the venerial act, as nigh as you can: and vse to eat euery morning fasting a litle Sage and hearb Grace, with a bit of bread: and beware of eating any muddy fish in this month (taken with the net) least through the eating of them, you catch some sickenesse, and die therof: and vse to eat Verivice in al your meats, for that the same doth cole and refresh the body: but refraine the eating of fruits in this moneth: and very healthfull it is vnto the body, to annoynt the necke and brest with the iuice of hearbe grace, Hope, and Smallecche mixed with Honnie, and enter into a bathe fasting, yet bathe but moderatly all the Moneth through, for that otherwise to bathe is very daungerous in this moneth: and beware of eating either Beets, or Lettuce, in this moneth, for that they haue nowe a kinde of poyson in them, which

which now bee right perrillous : and yet profitable it is vnto Husbandmen, to eate both Garlike, Sage, and fatte Bacon.

August.

In the moneth of August dooth choller with melancholly encrease, so that now do happen agues, with colde and burning, and other grieuous sicknesses hardly cured. Wherfore a man must now refrain the veneriall act, and order himselfe in a moderate condition, as sleping but litle in the day time all this moneth, and to beware of taking any colde, or to bleed by vaine, or to vomite, or otherwise to take any medicine to purge the body : and refraine from eating any pottehearbes all this moneth through : and refraine from eating any Cabbages, for that they engender melancholly, because the ague in men: and vse to eate Sage in all your meate, for that the same is profitable vnto the bodye, and Mellons the like, yet lesse in quantity at your meales : and drinke both good and pleasant wine, and eat both pullets and veale, for that such comfort the body : and vse to eat often Cinnamon in your meats. And an ointment thus prepared, doth helpe many diseases of the body: Take Penitroyall, herbe-Grace, Fenell, Smallech, the seeds of Isope, Bay-beries, and alom, vnto which adde Oyle Olive, tempering altogether with honey, and after annointing the body therewith: and to eat also Lettuce, and all other things that be colde of quality, is now commended.

September.

In the moneth of September eate all manner of meates you list, for that in the same moneth all thinges bee in their proper vertue And for so much as the haruest is wel entred, therefore it is nowe good to take a gentle purgation, like as is the floure of Cassia new drawne, that gently purgeth the body, and comforteth nature: wherefore this likewise ought to bee doone, to the end to preserue the body in health vnto the next spring, & also to vse cordiall pouders in your broths, vnto the spring. Also in this moneth may simples be well applied in any sicknesse, for that the rots, the fruits, & seeds, doe

now abound, and bee also thorough ripe. And what could not aptly be ministred in the Moneth of May with simples, may in this Moneth be done with them. And to eat Pomegranates and Goates milke, is well commended in this Moneth, for that they both encrease blood, and cause a good colour.

October.

In the Moneth of October doe our bodies ware drie and the braine moist, and greater bones, and therefore it behoueth to eat roasted meats often in this moneth, and to drink pleasant wine. Also drinke newe wines, and eat pleasant meat often, as Goats milke fasting, for that the same doth now purifie the blood and cleanse the lungs: and eat often apple-tarts, prepared with comfortable spices and Sugar, in that they comfort greatly the stomacke: but washe not the head in all this moneth. And you may let blood in this Moneth, or giue a Potion to purge, like as the necessitie of the sicknesse or disease shall so require: and beware of eating too much of new fruits: but the eating of the Radish root is yet profitable, and to eat mustard also with all meats is likwise commended: also all wilde foules eaten now, bee thought good, and Cloues with Cinamon, are profitable in this Moneth.

Nouember.

In the month of Nouember is melancholy encreased, and blood decreased, and for this it is profitable to eat both egs and honny, and to vomite also sundrie times, and salt powdered meats is now commended: and bath not in this moneth or but litle, if neede so requireth, for that it is thought to bee the most perrilous moneth of the yeere to bathe in: and besides, the blood is now restrained within the arteires of the body, which by sweating in the hot bath should so cause the stirring vp of humours, and a stilling from the head, with vncurable paines of the head, and darknes of sight, and paines otherwise of the eies. And in this moneth you may (if need so require) either purge the body, or bleede by vaine: also the eating now of honny, Ginger, Pulse, and Goates milke, is

pro-

profitable to the body, for that they increase bloud, and cause a good colour to man: and Cinamon and Ginger drunke often in this moneth is greatly commended, for that they giue health. And in this moneth goe not timely forth, because of the stincking mistes and fogges which then bee that greatly harme the head, and therefore let the Sun bee of some height before your going forth of the dores.

December.

In the moneth of December doth melancholy and flegme encrease, which be both heauy and cold: and therefore a man must now kepe the body and head very wel from colde, and to eate such thinges as bee of hot quality: also to eat potage made of Coleworts and Cabages, and to eat rosted Onions prepared in Salets, and either rosted apples or peares after meals, be greatly commended: and eat the flesh of wethers, Rammes, and Goats, also Capons, and al manner of Land foules, but no water foules: and bleed but a litle in this moneth, and that in the head paine, for that in no moneth of the yere man hath lesse store of bloud than in this: and goe not forth of your house in the night time, except you bee otherwise constrained, for that the moist aire of the night doth much harme the body: and eat now Parcely rootes tenderly sodden, for that they much comfort the stomacke: and eate Rape rootes also rosted vnder the embers (all this moneth through) for the health of the body. And eat not in this moneth neither of cowes nor swines flesh, for that they be now ouer moist, and also vnprofitable vnto the body: and drinke often wine in this moneth: and eat meats dressed with hony and Cinamon, Mace, Nutmegs, Ginger, Graines, Cloues, Galingale, and such like: and the same in drinke this month, doe cherish the bloud, the heart, and all the body.

Of the falling sicke in any of the weeke daies, out of that auntient Phisition Hypocrates.

Chap. 6.

AND now if any first falleth sick on the sonday, and amendeth not of that sicknes at the fift day after, he doth die in the ninth day following: but if he recouer and come to better

health

health about the eight or ninth day after, then doth he recouer perfect health about the fiftænth day following.

And if any first falleth sicke on the monday, then hee shall recouer health at the ninth day following, but if that sicknes continue to the twelfth day, the patient shall then die in the fourtænth day after.

And if any shal fall sicke on the Tuesday, hee shal then amend at the third day after, but if the sicknes yet continueth then death to be loked for without doubt, at the first or eight day after.

And if any first falleth sicke on the wednesday, and that at the seuenth day falleth to good rest, and sleepeth, they shall amend of that sicknes, but if the sicknes indureth to the twelf day, and increasing vnto the first or seuenth day, he dieth then without doubt.

And if any first falleth sick on the Thursday, then he amendeth at the ninth day following, but if the sicknes longer continue, yet amendment vnto health at the fiftænth day following.

And if any beginneth to fall sicke on the Friday, he shal after amend at the seuenth or eight day following, but if that sicknesse longer indureth, then death to bee feared at the fiftænth day after. And if that sicknes shall somewhat abate at he eight or ninth day after, then the patient shall recouer to health at the firtænth day following.

And if any falleth sicke on the Saturday, and that the same sicknesse dooth continue to the first day, then the person dieth at the eight day following, but if that person commeth vnto health at the seuenth day after. & sleepeth quietly that night without paine of the sicknesse, hee shall after recouer perfect health at the fourtænth day following. And further note, that all men in health haue their vrine or water in the morning white, before dinner againe redde, after dinner clearer and whiter, and at the euening before supper hot.

Of

Of those manifest signes which declare raine to followe. Cap. 7.

FIrst a redneſſe of the aire about the Sun being newe riſen, doth declare a token of raine to enſue.

And a like rednes of the aire about ẏ Sun at the euening doth foꝛeshowe faire weather the next day following. And when about the Sun (after he is riſen, oꝛ beginneth to ſet) shal appeare blacke oꝛ græne cloudes, oꝛ blacke cloudes mixed with græneneſſe, and a circle at that time likewiſe appearing about the Sun, oꝛ elſe shall aſcend with black oꝛ græne cloudes, oꝛ appearing neere vnto a græneſſe, oꝛ elſe that the Sun shall haue large cloudes both aboue & beneath him, doth declare raine and foule weather to enſue, either the ſame day oꝛ night following. And the like notes in the riſing of the Sun, declareth raine the ſame day & the like at the euening, then raine to enſue that night following.

And the Sun appearing hollow oꝛ ſpottie, oꝛ elſe ariſing oꝛ ſetting vnder a cloud, doth declare raine to follow.

And when the Sun ariſeth oꝛ ſetteth bigger then cuſtomably it is ſeene, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing leſſer in the ariſing then cuſtomably, oꝛ at the ſetting sheweth it ſelfe deuided into a blackiſh cloude, and that neere to the earth, doth declare raine to follow ſhoꝛtly after.

And when a blacke, long and thicke cloude shall appeare aboue the Sun, at the ſetting in the weſt, it doth declare raine to enſue.

And a miſt about the Sun, when the ſame doth long tarie, oꝛ not quickly ſpent, doth declare raine to follow, in that the ſame is cauſed thꝛough the deawie and raynie vapours, caried betweene the Sun and our ſight.

And when the Sun after his riſing, sheweth thꝛough a thicke cloude bꝛoken open, and ſhoting out beames darkely, oꝛ elſe the Sun appearing diuided, doth declare raine to followe.

And the Sun appearing the greater parte of the day thorough thin cloudes, oꝛ a myſtie aire the moſt part of the day,

so that the Sunne sheweth through it like to a round boale doth declare raine to follow. And when the Sun after the arising or the setting, especially in the spring and haruest, and ginsth forth mightye beate in a mystie ayre, doth either declare winde or raine to ensue.

And when a thicke and blacke cloude appeareth aboue the Sun in the rising, and that by and by after the Sun is hid vnder that cloude, then doth it declare raine to ensue. But if the Sun be not hid of that cloude, then doth followe faire weather.

And the ouer-timely rising and appearing of the Sun aboue the earth, doth declare raine to ensue.

And when in the third night after the change of the mone the hornes appeare blunter and bigger then customably, it doth declare raine to follow in that month.

And the Mone hauing blacke spots in the toppes of her hornes, doth then signifie showers in her first wekes, and if such spots at the full of the Mone apeare in the middle, then doth the same declare faire weather to ensue.

And if the third night after the Mone change, the south wind bloweth, then in the fourth day following it shall either raine more or lesse.

And if the Mone be not sene before the fourth night, and that the south winde then bloweth, it doth declare raine to followe most parte of that month. And the Mone in her first appearing, shewing blacker of body then customably and hauing blacker hornes, doth declare foule and raynie weather before the end of that month.

And the Mones beames at the blowing then of the south wind, shewing darker, bigger and shorter downward toward the earth, doth declare raine to followe.

And this is a great token of raine to follow, when as the Sun in the day time, and the Mone in the night, do appeare pale or blackish of colour.

And when the night is faire and cleare, and the Element appearing fuller of Starres then accustomably, doth then declare raine to follow shortly after.

And

And another note of raine to ensue, is when fewer starrs appeare in the night then customably, for that our sight then is hindred through the vapoures running in the ayre.

And the appearance of blacke cloudes in the ayre, and ascending of a mist or fogge vpward, in that the vapours then be thicked togither, do declare raine to ensue.

And when the clouds in the ayre be in a manner of all one colour round about, do then declare raine shortly after.

And cloudes appearing in the ayre like to flockes of wool, do sometime signifie raine with colde, but no great raine, for that those flockes appearing, do declare the grossenesse of the vapoures.

And white clouds appearing in the Sommer time, do declare haile to ensue: but white clouds appearing in the air in the winter time, do declare snow to follow.

And when a mist or thinne Cloud dooth happen in a drie season, and that the same ascendeth vpward, and is turned into a thicke cloude, dooth then declare raine to ensue, but the same falling downward whiles the raine indureth, or shortlie vppon the raine, dooth then declare faire weather to ensue.

And if many white clouds appére nére the earth in the euening, for two or thrée daies together in the winter time, they do then declare both colde and snow to ensue.

And the clouds in the winter time appearing whiter then customable, doth declare Snowe to followe, especiallye when after suche appearaunce, the aire is then felt somewhat warme, through the heat which is then sent out of the cloud.

And the often chaunging of the winde, which is especially knowne by the course of the clouds, doth declare rain to follow, in that the cloudes be driuen with the windes, and the vapours also gathered together, which through the thicking together, doth cause the raine to fall.

And the blowing of the South windes doth declare vndoubtedlie raine to follow, in that those windes bee hot and moyst, and thereof doe so easily resolue the vapours from the

bodyes aboue, which causeth the raine to fall. Also a gentle south winde doth euermore send downe rayne, when as the same beginneth to cease and wexe still.

And the dewe not fallen in the accustomed season, and beginning then to fall, is a sure token of rayne to ensue, in that the dewe falleth not in the accustomed season, which perfectly declareth that the vapours which be in the matter of dewe be then caried vp with others, and so thickned togither into a raynie cloude.

And when the Rayn-bow appeareth in the morning, before the middle of the day in the west, and the like at afternoone toward the euening in the East, doth vndoutedly declare long rayne to followe.

And the Rain-bow appearing in a faire day, doth declare rayne to follow, but appearing after foule weather, doth declare faire weather to ensue.

And the Rain-bow apearing in the south, declareth much raine to follow, and apearing in the west, declareth thunder and a small raine to follow, and apearing about the euening in the east, doth promise faire weather.

And the græner the Raine-bowe shall appeare, so much the longer raine doth follow. But the redder the Rain-bow doth appeare, euen so much the bigger also doth the winde ensue.

And if the same appeareth in faire weather, then doth it declare both raine and winde to ensue.

And the like a Rain-bow apearing about the Mone or about the light of a candle, declareth raine to follow.

And two Rain-bowes appearing at one time, as the one hanging downward from the south, and the other Rainbow from the north, do declare raine to follow.

And when the cloudes and windes driue one way, or into one quarter togither, declareth raine to follow without dout.

And now these fewe Celestiall tokens here rehearsed, are both manifest and true, which any person of small knowledge may lightly conceiue and truly prognosticate vpon.

And further the earthly signes be these, as first when that vapoures

vapours breath out of the erth, as the like is manifestly felt by entring into any deep vaut or cellour vnder the earth, being especially within a citie or great towne, and that the privy giueth forth a mighty stinke, that then raine doth shortly after follow.

And another note also of the earth, is, when timely in the morning before day light a mist ariseth, which sheweth low on the earth, & that the Mone then shining, causeth the mist to shew in forme of a sea, and that after the sun is risen, the same maketh the aire very darke, and blacke clouds also appearing in the aire, which togither declareth a mighty rain to follow, and long enduring.

And when the dust is more raised vp than customably, and that trees also much more moued in the groues and woods, it doth declare rain without dout, in that ther is then a mighty breaking forth, both of many and grosse vapours.

And when riuers and wels be shalower of water then customably, it then declareth raine to followe, in that the same matter and water falleth from the clouds, and of this when those impressions be diminished, then be those moistures drawen vp, which so ingendreth the raine.

And the drines of hands, and the clefts and roughnesse of the lips do declare raine to follow, in that the attractiue vertue of the moisture is then both mighty and strong, which so drieth the body, and maketh the lips rough. And of this the earthly bodies be altered according to the altering of the celestiall bodies aboue.

And when small birds in the beginning of winter, do gather and fly many in a company togither, seeking their meat in such companies in the fielde, it after declareth colde and frosts to ensue, and stormy weather.

And all birds, when they make a great noise in the flying then customably, and by trimming their feathers with their bils, doe declare raine to follow.

And al riuer foules playing and beating themselues in the water, and washing themselues in that water, doe declare raine to ensue. And the like doe the riuer foules by leauing

the water, and coueting the Pedowe, signifie raine to follow.

And the Geese making a long noise together, and flying, do signifie a tempest to ensue.

And the Bees sarking their honny neerer home than customablie, do declare a Tempest, and rainie weather to ensue.

And when the shepe toward the euening, at their driuing vnto fold, doe fed more earnestly in their going, and take no care of the shepherds calling and crying vnto them, and that scarcely with strokes to be driuen forward, doe after signifie raine to follow.

And the bird named the Pie, chattering more than customably, doth after declare rain to ensue. And the swine drawing forth, tearing and hiding handfuls of hay, do declare rain to follow.

And the Frogs making a greater noise than customably, doe declare raine to ensue: and if the dew appeare not in the morning, so that the same be not hindred through the wind, after signifieth raine or frost to ensue, and this according vnto the time of the yeare.

And the Oxen licking the hoofes of the hinder fet, and against the haire, and lying all alike on the right side, doe declare raine to follow.

And beginning to raine, if the Oxen fede gradilier, doe then declare the longer continuance of raine. And the Oxe beating with the fore fot, doth either declare raine or tempest to follow.

And the Doues comming later vnto the doue-house, than customably, doth declare raine to follow. And the sound of bels or clockes heard further off then customablie, doth declare raine to follow, except the same be caused of wind.

Of those manifest signes which declare faire and drie weather to follow. Chap. 8.

And first, when either the Sun ariseth, or setteth cleare, so that he be not covered of any clouds, doth then signify faire weather that day following: and if in the Suns rising,

any

any circle appeareth about him of diuers colours, or that declineth vnto a fiery redneſſe, or that the Sun beames paſſing through the clouds, ſhalbe red and long (ſo that the beames ſeeme like ſhots) & red ſcattered without the circle, doth then promiſe mighty winds to follow.

And the Sun ſetting red, declareth raine to followe, and if after the Suns ſetting in the weſt, red fiery clouds ſhal appeare, it declareth aſſuredly wind to follow.

And if the Sun ſhew red, or vnto an Orenge colour before his ſetting, eſpecially for a great ſeaſon before his ſetting, or in a maner throughout the whole day, and that in the weſt, be appear of a great bignes, it doth vndoutedly ſignifie wind to follow.

And the Sunne riſing hot, and not twinckling, declareth winde to follow: and if the ſun in the riſing appeare hollow, declareth either wind or raine to follow: and if the ſun be felt hot many dais together, doth after ſignifie drought & winds long continuing.

And if the Sun in the winter time toward his ſetting ſhall ſhew clearer and redder then cuſtomably, and that the north wind, or ſome other cold wind ſhal then blow, it doth ſignifie froſt that night following.

And this declareth clearing of the weather in the time of raine, when as a brightneſſe and clearing appeareth in the North-part, and that in the South-part appeareth ſwelled clouds heaped together.

And when after the Sun ſetting, the Element appeareth blew, and few ſtarres appeare, and that the dew be ſmall, it doth declare faire weather the day following.

And if in the morning a miſt appeare, which after the Sunne is riſen, falleth downe-ward, and riſeth not vpward any more, to bee ſeene of any, it declareth a faire day following.

And when many white cloudes appeare, eſpecially in the Weſt (neere vnto the earth) and in the euening, and this for two or three daies together in the winter time, it declareth both cold and ſnow to enſue.

And

And a troubling of the aire vnto raine, and that the clouds be then whiter then customably, declareth snow to ensue, especially when after such an appearance of the clouds, the air bee felt somewhat hot, through the heat which is then sent fourth out of the clouds.

And when the clouds driue one way, and the winde another, and right against the going of the cloudes, doth declare fair weather to follow. And the reason of this is, for that the wind bloweth contrary vnto the going of the clouds, which drieth them in such sort, that they cannot raine downe.

And the Starrs seene to run or shot, declare wind to arise out of that quarter, and if they shot on euery side, then they declare wind to follow out of all the quarters.

And if the Starres in the winter time appeare brighter than customably, declareth a great colde to ensue. And the starres twinckling in the winter, doth declare a great colde and big frost to follow.

And if the starrs be seene greater, both in light and bignesse than customably, doth then declare wind to follow.

And if the Bats do flie about timelier in the euening, and more of them than customable, doth then declare faire and hot weather the next day following.

And if the Moone after the third day of her change, apeareth in the West, with cleare and faire bornes, and hath no mist about her, declareth faire wether to follow al that quarter.

And if the Moone appeare small and red, and that also the same part of the moone, which then hath no light of the Sun, appeareth cleare, and with a certaine driuing (as it seemeth vnto the eie) doth declare wind to follow out of that quarter from which the colours come, and about the Moone depart.

And if there appeare one cleare circle about the Moone, which soone vanisheth awaie, doth then declare raine to follow.

And where the Rain-bow appeareth but of two colours, as redde and yellow, and of no other colours, declareth faire weather

weather to followe. And lightning seene in the euening, without thunder and clouds, and that often together, and nere the earth, declareth a faire day following.

And clouds seene like vnto fleeces of woll, scattred in the aire, and the Sunne be then of a good height, declareth faire weather to ensue.

And the Northwind strongly blowing, although it causeth manie clouds, doth neuertheles cause faire weather to ensue for the more part.

And the noise of woods, and much mouing of the leaues, doth declare winde and a tempest to ensue.

And the Kytes playing & wauering about in the aire, and that the one followeth the other in their flying, declare a hot and faire day to follow.

And if little flyes, somwhat before the Sunnes setting, do gather round on a heape before the Sunne, and play vp and down, declare a faire and hote season the next day following.

And if a white smoke be risen before the rising of the Sun, and after the sunne setting, vpon the waters, marishes, and medowes, it doth signifie hote & faire weather the next daye following: and if the same appeareth in the morning, then faire weather that day: and if at night, then faire weather the next day following:

And the Hedgehog where he lieth, maketh two holes, the one opening toward the north, & the other toward the south, and which of them he stoppeth, from the same part the wind ariseth: & if both at once, then great store of wind to followe.

And the Crowe timely calling in the morning, declareth faire weather to follow: but crowing softly in the euening, declareth a tempest to ensue.

And the Crow calling hastely twice or thrice together, declareth a tempest to follow.

And the dogge wallowing on the earth, declareth a great winde to followe: and lying on his right side, doth signifie a tempest to ensue.

And Oxen also lying on the right side, declare a tempest to ensue: but the Oxe lying on the left side, declareth faire wea-

ther to follow. And the Rauen standing gaping against the sunne, declareth a hote weather to ensue.

And the Rams skipping oftner than customably, if they but together with their heads, declare a tempest to followe.

And many long webs (which some call the spittle of the Sunne) driuing in the aire, declare winde or tempest to followe.

And the Ramme not changing his voice in faire wether, declareth the longer continuance of the same, as some ancient men write.

And a darknes of the aire after raine, declareth faire wether to ensue (as most Authors write.)

And when many shootes of fire (drawing the tayle after them) appeare in the aire, like vnto the shooting of the starrs, which by fierie vapors, running & shining like vnto the light of the starrs, drawing after them a taile, doth declare winde to follow.

And if such vapours shoote out of manie quarters of the aire, they declare sundrie windes to arise, and doth thunder and lightning out of those parts.

And the drinces of things by a sudaine maner in the winter time, and no rainie weather, like as of paper, the Marble stone, and such like, declare frost and cold weather to ensue.

And when Cranes flie in straight order, & not bending, or turning again, it declareth faire weather to ensue, for that they fly not in such order, before they see the weather clære.

And the clouds also in the clære aire caried vpward, out of what quarter of the Element the same be, doth signifie the winde to arise out of that quarter.

And if the cloudes heaped together, by drawing nere the Sunne be scattred, and this caused from the north, declareth winde to ensue.

And snow falling in the beginning of frost, if the same fal verie small, declareth the mightier colde to followe, but if the snowe fall bigge, then a sodaine thawe of the frosse to ensue.

And

And the haile falling in the spring and harueſt, declareth a faire ſeaſon, and ſomewhat warme the ſame day: and this according to the time of the yere.

And if anie dreameth to ſee birds, it declareth winde to follow the next day, as hath been experienced.

And windes in the winter blow about the morning, but in the Summer about the euening, and in the winter out of the Eaſt, and alſo in the Summer out of the Weſt. And if winde continue long North, and the harueſt windie, declare a ſtill winter: but if the harueſt be ſtill, then a windie winter.

The Booke of the Art or craft of Planting and Graffing.

To graffe frute that ſhall haue no core.

TAke a graffe and bow both ends combing, and cut both ends graff-wiſe, and ſo faſten them into the ſtocke. And if it grow ſo with the tree, cut away the great ende, and let the ſmaller end grow, and his frute ſhall haue no core.

To make Apples red.

If you will make Apples red, take a graffe of an Apple tree, and graffe it in a ſtocke of Elme or Eldar, and it ſhall beare red Apples. Alſo you may boze a hole in an apple-tree to the pith, and temper it with water of what colour ye wil, and then put it in the hole, and ſtop it with a pin, & the apple ſhalbe of the ſame colour that you put in the tree.

It is to be noted, that euery tree that is planted vpon S. Lamberts day in the earth, ſhall not periſh, but proſper and come to profite.

To make the Pear-tree beare much frute.

If you will haue a Pear-tree full of frute, or els aſmuch as it hath been wont to beare, temper Seamony with water, & put it into a hole that is perced to the pith of the tree, & ſtop the hole with a pin of that ſame tree, or of another, & it ſhall beare as it was wont, and much more plentifuller.

And if thou wilt haue them to smel like spices, or as musk, or balme, or other spices: make an hole in like sort in the tree, and stop it againe, and the frute shall smell and sauour after the spices.

To reuiue an old tree that is decayed.

If an old tree begin to ware drie, do in this wise quicken him againe, so that the eares that is about the rots be done away, and cleaue two or three of the greatest rotes with an axe, and put a wedge into the cleauing, and couer the rot againe with the same earth.

Note also.

Perce the tree through with a percer crosse wise, or with a wimble, and the strength of the tree shal begin to wax yong.

How to make a soure frute tree bring forth sweete frute.

If you will haue a frute tree that is soure, to bee made swet frute, delue the tree round about, & dung the rots with pigges dung, and so shall the frute be made swet: also make an hole in the soure tree with a percer to the pith, & into the hole put water tempred with honny, and stop the hole again with a pinne of the same tree.

The ordring of an Almond-tree, wal-nut-tree, Cherry-tree, and Peach-tree.

Put the kernels of which of these ye will in water foure daies, and then put many kernels together into the earth, or seuerally: and when they spring and be grown out, and haue stod so a whole yere, then take them out of the ground, and set them then where you will. And it is to be noted, that of euerie tree the branches must be cut in setting time, saue the Peach-tree, which must haue his drie branches cut onely.

How to nourish the Peach-tree, if it begin to wither.

If the Peach-tree begin to wither, let him be wel moistened at the rote with dregs of wine, and the same moistning shall keep him from shedding of his frute: and some say, that if the rotes bee moystened with water of the decoction of beanes, it shall quicken the tree greatly: and if hee cast his frute ere they bee ripe, make hoales with a wimble in the

rotes,

rots, & make pins of willow, and smite them fast in, and the frute shall abide on fast inough.

How to water plants when they waxe drie.

It shalbe good to water them when the time is dry, in the first yere: then when they haue put forth new cions, leaue no more growing but the cion which is the principall & fayrest, vpon euerie stocke one, all the other cut off hard by the stocke: & euer as there do grow small twigs about the stock, ye shall (in the moneth of March and Aprill) cut them al off hard by the stock. And if you then stick by euery plant a prette wand, and so binde them with willow barke, brier, or osiers, it shall profite them much in their growth. Then after fiue or sixe yeres growth, when they be so big as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may then remoue anie of them, whereas you will haue them grow and remaine.

The ordering of the Apple tree.

If an apple tree begin to rot, or any of the apples begin to waxe rustie, then the barke of him is sick: then cut it with a knife, let it be opened, and when the humor thereof is somwhat flowen ouer, see that you dung him well, and stop diligently his wound with clay.

The ordring of the Quince-tree.

The Quince-tree all the time that he is able to be translated, he would be remoued euerie fourth yere, and that shal make him beare great plentie of frute afterward.

The ordering of the Cherry-tree.

The Cherry-tree loueth cold aire, and moist ground, but some Cherry-trees like wel in hilly places. The best setting of Cherry-trees is in the moneth of November, and if need be, in the latter end of Januarie. And if the Cherry-tree rot, in any wise make a hole with a pearcer vnder the rote, that the water that causeth the rotting, may haue issue out. It is supposed that this medicine is good for all manner of trees that begin to rot. Also it is good for all maner of trees, when a bough is cut away, that the place that is cut be couered with clay, or some other defensible plaister, for the defence of the raine, that it make not the tree to rot.

At what time Prunes ought to be planted.

The planting of Prunes in colde and moyſtie places, is beſt in Februarie and March, and the ſtones muſt bee ſet a hand breadth in the earth, & when they haue ſtood ſo a whole yere, take vp the ſprings of them, and ſet them deeper in the ground, and the ſtones muſt lie in water three daies ere they be ſet.

How the Medler ſhould be planted.

The Medler will beare well if he be planted, but graffe him in a white thorne called an Hawthorne, and they will beare more plenteouſly.

The ſowing of Roſes in a garden.

If you will haue any Roſes in your garden, you muſt take the hard popins of the ſame Roſes that be full ripe, & ſowe them in the earth in Februarie or in March And when they ſpring, temper them with water, & after the ſpace of a yere, you muſt tranſlate them, & depart them farther from other, in what other place you will.

How to plant white Grapes.

If you will that a vine beare on one ſide white Grapes, and on the other ſide red, prouide that a white Vine and a red be ſet nere together. And when they bee rooted meaſurably both like much of either pare away halfe endlong vppon the pith, and twine them together, and binde them ſo, that either ſap meet without diſſoining, and wrap it vp together with a ſouple linnen cloth and euery third day moyſt it with water till it grow. And after that they be growen together, thou muſt cut away the one roote, and the other may beare it: and that Vine ſhall beare both red Grapes and white, notwithſtanding the one roote bee done away: and ſo thou maiſt do with two Pear-trees, or two Apple-tree branches.

How to ſet Vine plants two and two together.

You ought to plant and ſet your Vines in two and two together, the one to haue a part of the olde tree, and the other may bee all of the laſt yon: but when ye plant with him a a part of the old tree, he ſhal commonly take root ſoner than

the

the new cyon. You must weed them euerie moneth, and let not the earth be to close about their rotes at the first, but now and then lose it with a spade as ye shall see a raine past, for then they shall enlarge, and put forth better.

To make Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or Cherry-tree.

And if you will haue Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or a Cherry-tree, set a vine vnder one of those two trees, which you will: and when the Vine beginneth to grow, bore the other tree through with a percer, according to the greatnes of the vine: then draw the vine through the tree, & pare away the vpper end of the same vine, as farre as it shalbe in the hole, and so suffer it to grow: and when both be ioyned together, cut away the rote end of the Vine by the tree, and couer that place well with good earth of that cutting & drawing of the Vine through the hole, and the cutting awaye of the rote of the Vine, and that must be done in March: and some men will say it must bee done ere the knots begin to burgen, that for the straight drawing in, the burgens be not hurt. And thus maist thou do with diuers trees, and diuers frutes, and make one tree to beare diuers frutes of sundrie colours. Also ye must see that at the vine be good earth, and spred it self of manie scourges, it is good to cut that off with a knife, and if it lacke yet ouermuch, delue the stocke about, and fill the pit full of grauell of a flood, medled with ashes. And some men say, do into the pit a good quantitie of small stones, and that is good therefore.

The best times to Plant and Graffe in.

It is to be noted, that when the Moone is in Taurus, it is a good time to plant trees of Graines and Pepins: & when she is in Cancer, Leo, or Libra, it is good working of trees that be new sprung: and when the Moone is in Virgo it is good time to sowe all manner of things. And from the middest of September, vnto the middest of December, is open time of planting: and right so from the middest of Ianuarie, to the middest of March, but yet in these times it is good to those when the Moone is 5. 6. 7. 8. or 10. dayes

before

before the full. And after the full Mone, when she is 20.22. 23.24. or 25. dates old, for this quarter of the Mone is most temperate.

Note also.

Euerie planting is to be disposed so, that the Sun beames may come to the rot, or to the earth, from the houre of three vnto none, and be planted in the best manner. And the trees that be bearing and of great height, that part that stod toward the North, must be set against the North winde, & the Northwest winde: for the high North winde, & the Northwest winde, by kinde dooth kill and drie too much the trees that be new set for their vnmeasurable greatnes: the earth also must be ordeined so, that it be nether too fat nor grauelly but proportionably.

How to set all manner of peppins, kernels, and graines in the earth.

All maner of pepins, kernels, and graines, must be set in the earth, in deepnes of foure or fiue fingers broad, that each be from other halfe a foote: alwaies keeping this special rule, that the end or graine of the pepin that stands next the rote be Northeast in the setting, and that other ende vpward toward heauen. And that you moyst them twice or thrice in the day, not rotting, but dewing or sprinckling. This is a priuitie among cunning men, that in the spring is most conueniable time for seeds, graines, and peppins: and Autumn for springs and plants.

Of the manner and changing of the frute of the Pepin-tree.

Whensoeuer you do replant, or change your pepin-trees from place to place, in so remouing often the stock, the frute thereof shall also chaunge, but the frute which doth come of grafting, doth alwaies keep the forme and nature of the tree wherof he is taken: for as often I haue said, so often as the pepin-trees be remoued to a better ground, the frute therof shalbe so much amended.

How

How you may make an Orchyard in few yeares.

Some doo take yong straight slips, which doo growe from the rootes, or of the sides of the Apple-trees, about Michaelmasse, and doo so plant & set them with oates in good ground, whereas they shall not be remoued, and so graff being well rooted, thereon. Other some doo take & set them in the spring time after Christmas in likewise, & doo graffe thereon when they be well rooted: and both wayes doo spring well. And this manner of waye is counted to haue an Orchyarde the soonest. But theese trees wil not endure past twentie or thirtie yeres.

How you ought to set the Pine-tree.

For to set the Pine-tree, ye must set or plant them of nuts in March, or about the shote of the sap, not lightly after: ye must also set them where they may not be remoued after, in holes well digged and well dunged, not to be trans-planted or remoued againe: for verie hardly they wil shew forth cions being remoued, specially if ye hurt the master root therof.

To set Damsons or Plum-trees.

In setting damsons or plum-trees, which frute ye would haue like to the trees they come of: if the said trees bee not graft before, ye shal take onely the cions that grow from the root of the old stocke, which groweth with small twigs, and plant or set them, and their frute shalbe like vnto the trees they were taken of.

How to remoue a Setling.

When you will take a Setling that springeth out of another tree roote, make & delue thereabout after the quantitie thereof, and so deepe, till you come to the great roote that the spring groweth out of, and thou maist cut it off and holding the edge of the knife toward the tree-ground: and cut it so with slope draught, and leaue asmuch of the earth about the roote and stocke of the setting as you may, and set it in a good

ground ordained therefore, and in a conuenient time, as it is before said, & if any spring so groweth out of any tree, choose that which groweth right out, that is not ouer-long, but euen, without any small braunches, holding the knife in cutting alway toward the tree.

How to remoue a great tree.

And if you will remoone a tree that is great or bearing frute, chuse the full Mone, from the midst of October, to the middest of December, hauing vp the rotes as whole as you may, with the same maner and order as ye do with setting of small trees: and in the setting, it forceth not though the Mone be not euen in the full, so she be in the second or third quarter. The gouerning of these plants, is double of bearing of frute.

How to keepe late set plants.

Also if you will keep late set plants, keepe them from euening raines, and from windes, namely in harueft, for it is no great difficultie in the Spring. Against the comming of winter, set or sticke about the setting many boughes, that the Northern winde, or greatnes of other winds destroy it not: also put dung mingled with strawe about the stocke toward the rote, of a good thicknes, that frost and snow congeale not on the rot: and make a deep valley about the rot, the space of fire or seuen foot, that the water abide not and freese about the rote in harueft, that is, betweene summer & winter, that when winter commeth, it may be filled with dung, and so let it stand all the winter: and in the spring put vnder the dung new earth, and cut away all the vnprofitable braunches, and make it cleane about the stocke and the rotes, from wormes, scurfes, and mosses, and from euill weedes going about the braunches: all the close of thine Orchyard wholly beset about with other high trees that beare no frute, that the floures might be kept safe from windes. And beware that no frute bee gathered of anie tree before the time, for that is a right great and prime harming to the tree.

How

How you may keepe Cherries good a yere.

If you would kæp Cherries good a yere, ye shal cut of the stalkes, and then lay them in a well leaded pot, and fill the said pot with cherries: then put vnto them of good thin honie, and fill the pot also therewith. Which done, stop it with clay that no aire enter in, then set it in some faire cellar, and put sand vnder and all about it, and couer the pot withall, & so let it stand or remaine: thus ye may keepe them a yere, as fresh as though they came from the trée. And after this sort ye may kæpe peares or other frute.

How you may set Chesnuts.

The Chesnut-trée men do vse to plant like vnto the figge trée. They may be both planted and graffed well, they ware wel in fresh and fat earth, for in sand they like not. If ye wil set the kernels, ye shal lay them in water vntil they do sink, and those that do sinke to the bottome of the water be best to set, which ye shall set in the moneths of November & December, foure fingers dæpe, and a foote one from another: for when they be in those two months set or planted, they will endure long, and bear also good frute. Yet some there be that plant or set them first in dung, like beanes, which wilbe sweeter than the other sort, but those which be set in the two moneths aforesaid shall first beare their frute: men may proue which is best, experience doth teach. This is another way to proue and know which Chesnuts be best to plant or set, that is, ye shall take a quantitie of Nuts, then lay them in sande the space of xxx. daies, then take and wash them in water faire and cleane, & throw them into water againe, and those that do sinke to the bottome, are good to plant or set, and the other that swim are nought: thus may ye do with all other kernels or nuts.

The order how to plant or set trees at large.

This ought to be considered of al graffers & planters, that ye must giue a competent space from one trée vnto another,

when as ye make the holes to set them in, not too high, nor that one tree touch another. For a good tree planted or sette well at large profiteth often times more of fruite, than three or foure trees set too nigh together. The most greatest and largest trees commonly are wal-nuts and chest-nuts. If ye plant them severally in ranke, as they do commonly growe vpon high waies, beside hedges in fields, they must be sette fiue and thirtie foote asunder one from another, or thereabouts: but if ye will plant manie rankes in one place together, ye must set them the space of xlv. foote one from another, or thereabouts: and so farre ye must set your ranks one from another. For the Pear-trees and Apple-trees, & other sorts of trees, which may be set of this largenesse one from the other. If ye do plant onely in rankes by hedges, in the fields, or otherwise, it shalbe sufficient of xx foot one from another: but if you will set two rankes vpon the sides of your allies in gardens, which be of x. or xii. foot broad, it shal then bee best to giue them more space the one from the other in each ranke, as about fiue and twentie foote: also ye must not set your trees right one against the other, but entermedling or betweene euerie space, as they may best growe at large, that if need be, ye may plant of other small trees between, but see that ye set them not too thicke. If you list to sette or plant al your trees of one bignes, as of yong trees like rods, being pear-trees or appie-trees, they must be set a good space one from another, as of xxv or xxx. foot in square, as to saye, from one rank to another. For to plant or set smaller trees, as plum-trees or apple-trees of the like bignes, it shall bee sufficient for them xiiii. or xv. foot space in quarters. But if you will plant or set two rankes in your alleys in gardens, you must deuise for to proportion it after the largenesse of your said alleys. For to plant or set eager or sower Cherrie trees, this space shalbe sufficient inough the one from the other, that is of x or xii foote: and therfore, if you make great or large alleys in your garden, as of x. foote wide, or thereabouts, they shall come well to passe, and shall be sufficient to plant your trees of nine or ten foote space: and for the other

lesser sorts of trees, as of Quince-trees, Nut-trees, & such like, they be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

The best way to clense and proine, or dresse the rootes of trees.

And for the better clensing and proining trees beneath, do thus: ye shall take away all the weeds and grasse about the rots, then shall ye dig them so round about, as you wold see me to plucke them up, & shall make them halfe bare, then shall ye enlarge the earth about the roots, and where as yee shal see them grow faire and long, place or couch them in the said hole and earth again: then shal ye put the cut end of the tree, where he is graft, somwhat more lower than his roots were, whereby his cions so graft, shall spring so much the better.

The manner of Grafting.

The great stocke must be chosen in good ground, and it must be smooth and euen, and cut it without the earth the length of a foote or more, if it be as great as the thumb if it be greater, looke that the cutting bee euen ouerthwart the stocke, and aside, and it must be clouen aboue in the midst of the pith the length of two fingers bredth, & in the clift set the graffe, which must be chosen of the best tree. The stock is of the chief graffe that standeth right vpward, that hath a knot of the former yeare. And an inch beneath the said knot, cut thy graffe, and thwite it on both sides, euen in a manner of a wedge, as far as it shall go into the clift of the stocke. it must bee so euen thwitten, that the aire may not come betweene the clift and the graft, and then close it with good tempered earth about the graffe, for defence of raine and weather.

How to graft diuers frutes on one stocke.

If thou wilt graft diuers frutes vpon one stocke, that hath as many branches as thou wilt haue graffes on, in euerye branch set a graffe in manner and forme as it is said before, and euermore chuse the graffe on the Sunne side of the tree that beareth it, and nert the top if you may, and then maist

thou graffe diuers frutes in one clift, but none of them may be thicker than other, as your reason wil tel you in the working.

The way to graffe all sorts of trees.

First of all it is to be noted, that all sorts of frank trées, as also wilde trées of nature, may be graft with graffes, and in the scutchin, & both do well take, but specially those trées which be of like nature, therfore it is better so to graffe: how beit they may well grow and take of other sorts of Trées, but certaine trées be not so good, nor will prosper so well in the end.

How to graffe apple-trees, Quince-trees, Pear-trees, and Medlar-trees.

They graft the peare graff on other peare stocks & apple stockes, crab or wilding stockes: the Quince & Medlar vpon the white thorn. But most commonly they vse to graffe one apple vpon another, and both peares & Quinces they graffe on hawthorne and crab stocke. Another kinde of frute called in French Saulsay, they vsed to graffe on the willowe stocke, the manner thereof is hard to do, which I haue not sæn, and therefore I will let it passe at this present.

How to chuse your trees for graffes.

When the trées whereas you intend to gather your graffs be small & yong, as of v. or vi. yeeres growth, do not take the highest graffe thereof, nor the greatest, except it be of a smal trée of 2. or 3. yeares, the which commonly hath too much of toppe or wood: otherwise not, for you shall but marre your grafting.

How you may keepe graffes a long time.

Ye may kéep graffs a long time good, as from Alhallowtide (so that the leaues bee fallen) vnto the time of grafting, if that they be wel couered in the earth, halfe a foote déep therin, and so that none of them do appeare without the earth.

After what manner ye ought to begin to graffe.

Ye may wel begin to graff (in leauing the stock) at Christmas, or before, according to the coldnes of the time, & principally the healme or great cherrie, peares, wardens, or forward

ward frute of apples: & for medlers, it is good to tarrie vnto the end of Januarie & Februarie, vntill March, or vntil such time as ye shall see the trees begin to bud or spring.

To haue frute without cores.

To haue frute without cores, loke yee haue a sufficient graff-stocke, & therewith (as I said before) chuse a graffe of good Perle tree, and cut it on this manner. The ende of the graffe that is vpward next the firmament, must be thwited like the nether end of a comming graff, & the nether end turned vpward: & this is to be done warely. This rule is true in all trees that haue stones and kernels, but a vine it behoueth to cut that is downeward next the earth, with great cunning and sleight.

How to trimme your graffes.

Ye may graft your graffes full as long as 2 or 3. trunchions or cut graffes, which ye may likewise graffe withall very well, & be as good as those which do come of old wood, and oftentimes better, as to graffe a bough: for often it so happeneth a man shal find of oylets or eyes hard by the old slender wood, yet better it wer to cut them off with the old wood, and chuse a better & a faire place at some other eye aforesaid, and cut your graffes in making the incision on the one side narrow, & on the other side broad, as the inner side thin, and the outside thicke, because the outside of your graffe must ioyne within the cleft, with the sap or barke of the wynde stocke that it shalbe set in: see also that yee cut it smooth, as your clifts are in the stock, in ioining at euery place both euen and close, & especially the ioynts or corners of the graffes on the head of the stocke, which must be well and cleane pared before, and then set fast thereon.

How to graffe vines on cherry-trees.

If thou wilt haue a vine grow on a cherry-tree, and haue the taste of cherries, set a vine by a cherry tree till it grow & in the beginning of Feuerell what time it be, make a hoale through the cherry-tree in what place thou wilt, and as often as thou wilt, and draw through the hole a branch of the vine,

vine, so that it fill the hole, and shaue away the olde barke of that vine, asmuch as shalbe in the hole, and put it in, so that the shauen place of the branch stop full the hole of the cherri-tree, and then cut away the roote ende of the vine, and wrap it well about with good earth, and binde it wel with a little cloth, and keep it wellin all things, as in other graffings: but some men leaue the roote ende vncut a yere, till it be sowred with the cherry-tree, and then cut it away: & this is a good manner and a sure, and so it may bee done with diuers trees of diuers frutes, and the grape and the vine shal haue sauor of them: and so in euery tree may be graffed another, & it is a meruailous graffing.

To make a tree beare diuers frutes.

If you will haue a tree beare diuers frutes, and of diuers colours, and diuers sauors: in the first yeere graffe in diuers branches of a cherrytree diuers apples to thy liking, & leaue some of the branches vngraffed: the second yere make holes through the cherry tree, and draw through those holes, vine branches, the vtter end shauen of, as is before said: and in the same manner through another hole red Rose, and do therewith as before is said of the vine: and this diuersitie ye may vse after your owne liking.

FINIS.